ALADWAA
Gem

• مراجعات شهرية من أسئلة مجمعة من المحافظات وأسئلة مؤلفة.

CONNECT 2025

هدية مجانية

6th

PRIM.
SECOND TERM





Table of contents

Theme 3 I discover myself أنا أكتشف نفسى

Unit 7 Amazing artifacts قطع أثرية مذهلة

Lesson 1: Vocabulary	7
Practice on Lesson 1	11
Lesson 2: Language Focus	17
Practice on Lesson 2	20
Lesson 3: Metal in Ancient Egypt	22
Practice on Lesson 3	31
Lessons 4 & 5: Writing/Project	33
Practice on Lessons 4 & 5	37
Unit 7 Review	39
Check Your Vocabulary	40
Writing Time	41
Student's Book Corner	42
Test Yourself on Unit 7	43
Al-Azhar Corner	45

Unit 8 Toys and games دُمى وألعاب

Lesson 1: Vocabulary	47
Practice on Lesson 1	51
Lesson 2: Language Focus	56
Practice on Lesson 2	58
Lesson 3: Story	60
Practice on Lesson 3	66
Lessons 4 & 5: Writing/Project	68
Practice on Lessons 4 & 5	71
Unit 8 Review	73
Check Your Vocabulary	74
Writing Time	75
Student's Book Corner	76
Test Yourself on Unit 8	77
Al-Azhar Corner	79

Theme 4 Myself and others نفسى والآخرون

Unit 9 What's the story? ما القصة؟

Lesson 1: Vocabulary	81
Practice on Lesson 1	85
Lesson 2: Language Focus & Story	89
Practice on Lesson 2	92
Lesson 3: The Boy Who Cried Wolf	94
Practice on Lesson 3	98
Lessons 4 & 5: Writing/Project	100
Practice on Lessons 4 & 5	102
Unit 9 Review	104
Check Your Vocabulary	105
Writing Time	106
Student's Book Corner	107
Test Yourself on Unit 9	108
Al-Azhar Corner	110
March Revision	111

Unit 10 Free as a bird حر كالطير

Lesson 1: Vocabulary	115
Practice on Lesson 1	119
Lesson 2: Language Focus	126
Practice on Lesson 2	127
Lesson 3: The Benefits of Eco-tourism	129
Practice on Lesson 3	135
Lessons 4 & 5: Writing/Project	137
Practice on Lessons 4 & 5	142
Unit 10 Review	144
Check Your Vocabulary	145
Writing Time	146
Student's Book Corner	147
Test Yourself on Unit 10	148
Al-Azhar Corner	150



Unit 11 **How can I help?** كيف يمكننى المساعدة؟

Lesson 1: Vocabulary	152
Practice on Lesson 1	156
Lesson 2: Language Focus	162
Practice on Lesson 2	163
Lesson 3: It's Good to Give Back to the Community	165
Practice on Lesson 3	174
Lessons 4 & 5: Writing/Project	176
Practice on Lessons 4 & 5	180
Unit 11 Review	182
Check Your Vocabulary	183
Writing Time	184
Student's Book Corner	185
Test Yourself on Unit 11	186
Al-Azhar Corner	188
April Revision	189

Unit 12 **Atemu and Amethyst** أيتمو والحمامة الزاجلة (أمانيست)

Vocabulary	193
Story elements	194
The Beginning	196
The Middle	199
The End	202
General Practice	206

Final Revision & Exams

Revision on Units 7 & 8	209
Revision on Units 9 & 10	217
Revision on Units 11 & 12	225
Conjugation of Verbs	232
Final Exams	234
Al-Azhar Exams	266
امتحانات دمج	276
Tapescripts	280
Writing Time Answers	284



Unit 7

Amazing Artifacts

قطع أثرية مذهلة



Unit Objectives

By the end of this unit, the student will be able to:

- listen and read about artifacts in the Museum of Ancient History.
- listen, read, research, and write about important ancient artifacts.
- listen to a presentation about Ancient Egyptian metals.
- use the past simple.
- do a quiz about Ancient Egyptian artifacts.
- read about animals in Ancient Egypt.
- use prepositions of place.
- say words with the sound /er/.
- write a fact file about a metal or material in Ancient Egypt.
- research and write display boards for artifacts from Ancient Egypt.

بنهاية هذه الوحدة، سيكون التلميذ قادرًا على أن:

- يستمع ويقرأ عن القطع الأثرية الموجودة فى متحف التاريخ القديم.
- يستمع، يقرأ، يبحث، ويكتب عن القطع الأثرية المصرية القديمة الهامة.
- يستمع إلى عرض تقديمى عن المعادن المصرية القديمة.
- يستخدم زمن الماضى البسيط.
- يقوم بعمل اختبار حول القطع الأثرية المصرية القديمة.
- يقرأ عن الحيوانات فى مصر القديمة.
- يستخدم حروف الجر الخاصة بالمكان.
- ينطق كلمات بصوت /er/.
- يكتب ملف حقائق حول معدن أو مادة خام فى مصر القديمة.
- يبحث ويقوم بكتابة لوحة عرض عن القطع الأثرية المصرية القديمة.

Did you know?

- An artifact is an object that was made by humans in the past. The *Khufu solar ship is an artifact from Ancient Egypt. It is the world's oldest *intact ship.

Find out!

- There are many other Ancient Egyptian *artifacts that are wildly famous, such as *Tutankhamun's mask, *the Rosetta Stone that has ancient *hieroglyphic scripts written on it, and the Mummy of Ramses II.

* Khufu solar ship	سفينة خوفو الشمسية	* intact ship	سفينة سليمة	* artifacts	قطع أثرية
* Tutankhamun's mask	قناع توت عنخ آمون	* the Rosetta Stone	حجر رشيد	* hieroglyphic scripts	نصوص هيروغليفية



Lesson 1

A Visit to The Museum

زيارة إلى المتحف

Watch a video

1. Listen, point, and say:

استمع، أشر، وقل:

Main vocabulary



gold

ذهب



granite

جرانيت



glass

زجاج



clay

طين/ صلصال

Extra vocabulary

the Museum of Ancient History	متحف التاريخ القديم	guide	مرشد	eagle	نسر
primary school	مدرسة ابتدائية	parents	والدين	artifacts	قطع أثرية/ تحف فنية
well	حسنًا	reason	سبب	climate	مناخ
wet (adj.)	رطب / مبتل	weather	الطقس	certain (adj.)	محدد
materials	مواد / خامات	hard (adj.)	صلب	durable (adj.)	متين
fascinating (adj.)	مذهل	forever	للأبد	pots	أوانى / أوعية
Tutankhamun	توت عنخ آمون	tomb	مقبرة	valuable (adj.)	قيم/ ثمين
stone	حجر	paper	ورقة	papyrus	نبات البردى

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعـــال منتظمـة

Present		Past	Present		Past
damage	يدمر	damaged	preserve	يحفظ	preserved
last	يدوم	lasted	cover	يغطى	covered

Irregular verbs أفعـــال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
know	يعلم	knew	build	يبنى	built
find	يجد	found	make	يصنع	made
hear	يسمع	heard	keep	يحتفظ بـ	kept

Expressions and Phrases

welcome to + place	أهلًا بكم فى ...	excited to	متحمس لـ
first of all	فى البداية/ أولًا	(be) damaged by ...	يدمر بسبب ...
that's why	لهذا السبب	last forever	يدوم إلى الأبد
close to	بالقرب من	in good condition	فى حالة جيدة
work at	يعمل لدى / فى	good for	جيد لـ
for a long time	لمدة زمنية طويلة	made of	مصنوع من

Take care!

- للتحدث عن المادة التى صُنع منها شىء ما نستخدم:

اسم الشىء + is/are + made of + المادة المصنوع منها.

e.g. The statue is made of stone.

e.g. The pots are made of clay.

Important sentences جمل هامة

* We have so many artifacts in Egypt.

لدينا الكثير جدًّا من القطع الأثرية في مصر.

* We have a hot, dry climate that helps preserve the ancient artifacts.

لدينا مناخ حار وجاف يساعد فى الحفاظ على القطع الأثرية القديمة.

* Ancient Egyptians built the Pyramids with granite, a very hard and durable stone.

قام المصريون القدماء ببناء الأهرامات بالجرانيت، وهو حجر صلب ومتين للغاية.

* Ancient Egyptians liked to use gold because it is valuable and lasts forever.

كان المصريون القدماء يحبون استخدام الذهب لأنه قيم ويدوم للأبد.

* They used clay which is close to the River Nile to make pots.

استخدموا الطين الموجود بالقرب من نهر النيل فى صناعة الأوانى.

Check

Choose the correct answer: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1 Rings and necklaces are made of (clay – plastic – gold – paper).

2 Windows are made of (papyrus – glass – stone – granite).

3 Granite is (dry – wet – hot – durable) and hard, it can't be broken easily.

4 Cloth, clay, and glass are (museums – stones – artifacts – materials) we can use to make different things.

5 We keep the (granite – stone – clay – artifacts) at the museum because they're valuable.

6 The (Artifact – Museum – Material – Stone) of Ancient History is a big and amazing place.

2. Listen, read, and role-play: استمع، اقرأ وتبادل الأدوار:



Mr Tarek

Good morning and welcome to the Museum of Ancient History. My name is Mr Tarek and I am your guide today.

صباح الخير، ومرحبا بكم فى متحف التاريخ القديم. اسمى أستاذ طارق، وأنا مرشدكم اليوم.

Tamer



Good morning, Mr Tarek. I'm Tamer and this is my sister Tamara. We're students at Egyptian Eagle Primary School, and these are our parents.

صباح الخير، أستاذ طارق، أنا تامر وهذه أختى تمارا. نحن طلاب فى «مدرسة النسر المصرى الابتدائية»، وهذان والدانا.



Tamara

We're excited to learn more about Ancient Egyptian artifacts.

نحن متحمسون لمعرفة المزيد عن القطع الأثرية المصرية القديمة.

Mr Tarek



Great! What would you like to know?

عظيم! ما الذى تودون معرفته؟



Tamara

Well, first of all, why do we have so many artifacts?

حسنًا، فى البداية، لماذا لدينا الكثير من القطع الأثرية؟

Mr Tarek



That's an interesting question. One reason is the climate. We have a hot, dry climate here in Egypt, so artifacts aren't damaged by cold and wet weather. This helps to preserve them. The Ancient Egyptians also knew that certain materials could last a long time. That's why they built the Pyramids with granite, a very hard and durable stone.

هذا سؤال مثير للاهتمام. أحد أسباب ذلك هو المناخ. لدينا مناخ حار وجاف هنا فى مصر، لذلك لا تتضرر القطع الأثرية بسبب الطقس البارد والرطب. وهذا يساعد فى الحفاظ عليها. عرف المصريون القدماء أن مواد محددة يمكن أن تدوم لفترة طويلة. لهذا السبب بنوا الأهرامات بالجرانيت، وهو حجر صلب ومتين للغاية.



Tamer

That's fascinating! What other materials did they use?

هذا رائع! ما هى الخامات الأخرى التى استخدموها؟

Mr Tarek



They used a lot of glass, which lasts forever. They also used clay, which is found close to the River Nile, to make pots.

استخدموا الكثير من الزجاج الذى يدوم إلى الأبد. كما استخدموا الطين الذى وجدوه بالقرب من نهر النيل لصنع الأوانى.



Tamer

I also heard they used a lot of gold in Tutankhamun's tomb.

سمعت أيضًا أنهم استخدموا الكثير من الذهب فى مقبرة توت عنخ آمون.

Mr Tarek



Yes, the Ancient Egyptians liked to use gold because it is valuable, but it is also very durable. When they covered artifacts in gold, they kept them in good condition.

نعم، كان المصريون القدماء يحبون استخدام الذهب لأنه قيم، ولكنه أيضًا متين للغاية. وعندما غطوا القطع الأثرية بالذهب، أبقوها بحالة جيدة.



Tamer

I'm happy about that! It's exciting to enjoy the things they made.

أنا سعيد بذلك! من المثير أن تستمتع بالأشياء التى صنعوها.

Check

Choose the correct answer: **اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:**

1 Mr Tarek works in the (school – museum – hospital – workshop).

2 We have a (cold – hot – rainy – cloudy), dry climate in Egypt.

3 They used a lot of (clay – wood – glass – plastic), which lasts forever.

Practice

Lesson 1

• Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة: (للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

1 We have many in Egypt.
a) pyramids b) tombs c) artifacts d) temples

2 The climate in Egypt is
a) cold and wet b) hot and dry
c) cloudy and rainy d) cool and snowy

3 Ancient Egyptians used to build the Pyramids.
a) glass b) cloth c) clay d) granite

4 They used because it's valuable and durable.
a) papyrus b) clay c) gold d) stone

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1 My dad is a/an He works with tourists.
a) teacher b) doctor c) tour guide d) engineer

2 This necklace is made of gold. It's very أسيوط - إدارة منفلوط التعليمية 2024
a) cheap b) bored c) valuable d) wet

3 We keep fruits fresh by them. أسيوط - إدارة ديروط التعليمية 2024
a) preserving b) hearing c) damaging d) working

4 They used a lot of in Tutankhamun's tomb. الدقهلية - إدارة شربين التعليمية 2024
a) iron b) silver c) bronze d) gold

5 The Ancient Egyptians used to make pots. الدقهلية - إدارة دكرنس التعليمية 2024
a) clay b) granite c) glass d) gold

6 When you cover artifacts in gold, you keep them in good
a) shape b) size c) condition d) material

7 There are many artifacts in the of Ancient history.
a) Stone b) Pyramid c) School d) Museum

8 We discovered a lot of in the valley of the kings.
a) tombs b) clothes c) eagles d) guides

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص باستخدام الكلمات المساعدة:

room – silver – artifacts – toy أسيوط - إدارة دكرنس التعليمية 2024

Last summer, we went to a museum in the city. There were so many interesting(1)..... . My brother and I were walking around when we found a(2)..... that had lots of animal statues because animals were very important in their culture. First, we saw different statues in gold and(3)..... . Then we saw some in clay, stone, and granite, too.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

People say that there is a lot of gold in Tutankhamun's tomb. It's true! Ancient Egyptians liked to use gold because it is valuable, but it's also durable. When they covered their artifacts with gold, they kept them in good condition. Ancient Egyptians also knew that certain materials could last a long time. That's why they used granite to build the Pyramids because it's a very hard and durable stone. They used a lot of glass, which lasts forever. They also used clay, which is found close to the River Nile, to make their pots.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 were built with granite.

a) Pots b) The Pyramids c) Tutankhamun's tomb d) Artifacts

2 The underlined word "durable" means

a) cheap b) hard c) weak d) small

B Answer the following questions:

3 Why did the Ancient Egyptians like to use gold?

.....

4 What did they cover their artifacts with?

.....

5 Where could the Ancient Egyptians find clay?

.....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات فى الترتيب الصحيح لتكون جملًا:

1 do – Why – have – we – artifacts – many?

.....

2 Pyramids – The – are – made – of – granite.

.....

3 in Egypt – We – have – climate – a hot, – dry.

.....

4 covered – Ancient – in – artifacts – Egyptians – gold.

.....

6 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

Mr tarek is our guide today

.....

Study

Lesson 2

Watch a video

A They Loved Animals لقد أحبوا الحيوانات

1. Listen, point, and say: استمع، أشر وقل:

Main vocabulary



baboon
قرد البابون



monkey
قرد



rat
جرذ



crocodile
تمساح



hippo
فرس النهر



falcon
صقر



ibis
طائر أبو منجل



snake
ثعبان

Extra vocabulary

pets	حيوانات أليفة	particularly	على وجه التحديد	almost	تقريبًا
pests	آفات	important (adj.)	هام	mice	فئران
grain	حبوب	dangerous (adj.)	خطير	popular (adj.)	معروف/ منتشر
especially	خاصة	wisdom	حكمة	mummified (adj.)	مُحنط
Saqqara	سقارة	alone	وحده/ وحدها	afterlife	الحياة بعد الموت
common (adj.)	شائع	statues	تماثيل	turtles	سلاحف بحرية
seeds	بذور	flour	دقيق	knowledge	معرفة
decision	قرار	oils	زيوت	cloth	قماش
tricks	خدع	local (adj.)	محلي	university	الجامعة
boat ride	جولة بالقارب	hiking	التنزه على الأقدام	quiz	اختبار قصير

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعـــال منتظمـة

Present		Past	Present		Past
adore	يعشق/ يحب بشدة	adored	love	يحب	loved
believe	يعتقد	believed	clean	ينظف	cleaned
produce	ينتج	produced	need	يحتاج	needed
kill	يقتل	killed	represent	يمثل	represented
mummify	يحنط	mummified	include	يشمل	included

Irregular verbs أفعـــال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
keep	يبقى	kept	eat	يأكل	ate
feed	يُطعم	fed	teach	يُدَرس	taught
become	يصبح	became	grow up	يكبر	grew up
fall	يسقط	fell	hurt	يجرح / يأذى	hurt

Expressions and Phrases

keep as pets	يحتفظ بـ (اسم حيوان) كحيوان أليف	look after	يعتنى بـ
keep them safe	يبقيهم في أمان	free of	خالى من
important for	مهم لـ	as well as	بالإضافة إلى
everyday life	الحياة اليومية	as well	أيضًا
of course	بالطبع	look like	يشبه
fall over	يقع أرضًا	take turns	يتبادلوا الأدوار

Definitions

grain	حبوب	seeds from plants used to make flour and bread بذور من النباتات تستخدم فى صنع الدقيق والخبز
adored	عشق	loved something very much أحب شيئًا إلى حد كبير
wisdom	حكمة	using your knowledge to make good decisions استخدام معرفتك لاتخاذ قرارات جيدة
mummify	يحنط	to cover in oils and cloth to preserve for a very long time أن تغطى شيئًا بالزيوت والقماش للحفاظ عليه لفترة طويلة جدًا
statue	تمثال	an object made of stone or another material to look like a person or animal شيء مصنوع من الحجر أو مادة أخرى ليبدو مثل شخص أو حيوان

Take care!

نستخدم الفاصلة (,) عند ذكر قائمة (سلسلة) من الأسماء.

e.g. Some people kept crocodiles, hippos, and lions.

2. Look and read: انظر واقرأ:

1. What was the Ancient Egyptians' favorite animal?
ماذا كان الحيوان الأليف المفضل لدى المصريين القدماء؟



The Ancient Egyptians loved animals and kept many as pets. They particularly adored cats, and there was a cat in almost every house. The Ancient Egyptians believed that cats looked after them and kept them safe. They were also good pets because they cleaned themselves and kept the houses free of pests like rats and snakes. This was particularly important for farmers, who produced a lot of grain. The mice didn't eat the grain because the cats ate the rats!

أحب المصريون القدماء الحيوانات واحتفظوا بالكثير منها كحيوانات أليفة. كانوا يعشقون القطط على وجه التحديد، وكانت هناك قطة في كل منزل تقريبًا. اعتقد المصريون القدماء بأن القطط تعتني بهم وتبقيهم في أمان. كما أنها كانت حيوانات أليفة جيدة لأنها نظفت نفسها وحافظت على المنازل خالية من الآفات مثل الفئران والثعابين. وكان هذا مهمًّا بشكل خاص للمزارعين الذين ينتجون الكثير من الحبوب. الفئران لم تأكل الحبوب لأن القطط أكلت الفئران!

2. What other animals did the Ancient Egyptians keep?
ما الحيوانات الأخرى التى احتفظ بها المصريين القدماء؟



As well as cats, many people kept monkeys and baboons. Some people even kept crocodiles, hippos, and lions, which were dangerous and difficult to look after. They weren't popular pets!

بالإضافة إلى القطط، احتفظ العديد من الناس بالقرود وقرود البابون، حتى إن بعض الناس احتفظوا بالتماسيح وفرس النهر والأسود، التى كانت خطرة ويصعب الاعتناء بها. لم تكن حيوانات أليفة منتشرة!

3. Did the Ancient Egyptians keep birds as pets as well?
هل احتفظ المصريون القدماء بالطيور كحيوانات أليفة أيضًا؟



Yes, they did. The Ancient Egyptians loved birds too, especially falcons and the ibis, which represented wisdom. There are thousands of mummified ibises in Saqqara alone. All these pets weren't only important for the Ancient Egyptians' everyday life – they were also important in the afterlife. It is therefore common to find mummified pets and statues of animals in the tombs.

نعم، لقد فعلوا ذلك. كان المصريون القدماء يحبون الطيور أيضًا، وخاصة الصقور وكذلك طيور «أبو منجل» التى تمثل الحكمة. يوجد الآلاف من المومياوات المحنطة لطيور «أبو منجل» فى سقارة وحدها. كل هذه الحيوانات الأليفة لم تكن مهمة فقط للحياة اليومية للمصريين القدماء - كانت أيضًا مهمة فى الحياة ما بعد الموت. لذلك من الشائع العثور على مومياوات حيوانات أليفة وتماثيل حيوانات فى المقابر.

4. What animals are popular pets in Egypt today?
ما الحيوانات الأليفة الأخرى المشهورة فى مصر الآن؟



Today, cats are still popular pets in Egypt. Other animals that people keep today include, turtles, fish, and birds, which are of course much smaller and easier to look after than baboons and crocodiles.

لا تزال القطط اليوم حيوانات أليفة شهيرة فى مصر. وتشمل الحيوانات الأخرى التى يحتفظ بها الناس اليوم؛ كالسلاحف والأسماك والطيور، والتى هى بالطبع أصغر بكثير وأسهل فى الاعتناء بها من قرود البابون والتماسيح.

Check

1 Why were cats so popular in Ancient Egypt?

2 What is the bird that represented wisdom in Ancient Egypt?

B Language Focus

The Past Simple Tense زمن الماضى البسيط

We use the past simple tense to express an action that happened and ended in the past at a certain time. يستخدم زمن الماضى البسيط للتعبير عن فعل حدث وانتهى فى الماضى فى وقت معين.

يتكون الفعل فى الماضى من التصريف الثانى للفعل وينقسم إلى (regular verbs) و (irregular verbs) :

1. Regular Verbs أفعال منتظمة

يتكون الفعل بإضافة (ed/d/led) للفعل:

- الأفعال المنتهية بـ (a - e - i - o - u) + حرف ساكن، يضاف لها (ed) مع مضاعفة الحرف الساكن. drop → dropped
- الأفعال المنتهية بـ (y) قبلها حرف ساكن، نحذف الـ (y) ويضاف إليها الـ (ied). mummify → mummified
- الأفعال المنتهية بـ (e) يضاف لها (d): adore → adored
- معظم الأفعال يضاف لها (ed): talk → talked

2. Irregular Verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

الأفعال غير المنتظمة لا تتبع قاعدة عند تحويلها للماضى البسيط وتحفظ كما هى، على سبيل المثال:

Present	Past	Present	Past	Present	Past
be (am - is - are)	was / were	keep	kept	come	came
teach	taught	become	became	grow	grew

Affirmative Form: صيغة الإثبات:

Subject (الفاعل) + التصريف الثانى للفعل

eg - Ancient Egyptians loved animals. - They kept monkeys and baboons.

Negative Form: صيغة النفى:

Subject (الفاعل) + didn't + (inf.) الفعل فى المصدر

eg Mice didn't eat the grain.

Yes/No Question: السؤال بـ (هل):

Question السؤال

A: Did + subject (الفاعل) + (inf.) الفعل فى المصدر?

Answer الإجابة

B: Yes,	subject (الفاعل)	did.
B: No,		didn't.

eg A: Did you do your homework?

Or

B: Yes, I did.

B: No, I didn't.

Wh- Question: السؤال باستخدام كلمة الاستفهام:

A: Wh- word (كلمة الاستفهام)	did	subject (الفاعل)	(inf.) الفعل فى المصدر ...?

B: Subject + التصريف الثانى للفعل

e.g. A: What did Talia do last night?
B: She watched TV, then she went to bed.



e.g. A: What did you eat?
B: I / We ate pizza.

- عند الإجابة تحول «you» فى السؤال إلى «I» أو «We».

Key words: الكلمات الدالة:

yesterday	last	ago	in the past
أمس	الماضى	منذ	فى الماضى

e.g. - Hana went to the zoo yesterday.
- I visited my grandparents last week.
- Hossam and Ali met each other an hour ago.
- We lived in a village in the past.

Check

Choose the correct answer: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1 The chef (bake – baked – bakes – baking) the cake yesterday.
2 The train (leave – leaves – leaving – left) the station an hour ago.
3 The students (visit – visited – visiting – visits) the museum last week.
4 I finished my school exams (yesterday – tomorrow – now – next week).
5 They didn't (show – shows – showing – showed) the movie on time.
6 My father (don't – isn't – didn't – doesn't) travel abroad last year.
7 (Did – Do – Does – Are) Hana go to the beach last Sunday?
8 Where did you (put – puts – putting – to put) my jacket?
9 What (does – did – do – is) Hany do before he ate dinner?
10 Did it (rains – rain – rained – raining) heavily yesterday?

Verb to "be" in the past simple فعل «يكون» فى زمن الماضى البسيط

Affirmative Form: صيغة الإثبات:

I/ He/ She/ It + was

We/ They/ You + were

e.g. - Habiba was abroad last week.

- Cats were important pets in Ancient Egypt.

Negative Form: صيغة النفى:

I/ He/ She/ It + was not (wasn't)

We/ They/ You + were not (weren't)

e.g. - There wasn't a statue in the temple.

- Monkeys weren't popular pets.

Yes/No Question: السؤال باستخدام "هل":

Question: السؤال

Was	I/ he/ she/ it/?
Were	we/ they/ you/?

Answer: الإجابة

Yes,	subject (الفاعل)	was/were.
No,		wasn't/weren't.

e.g. A: Were there a lot of artifacts in the museum?
B: Yes, there were.

e.g. A: Was Hossam at the museum yesterday?
B: No, he wasn't.

Check

Choose the correct answer: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1 I (was – were – am – are) on a trip to Luxor last week.

2 Heba (isn't – wasn't – didn't – aren't) at school yesterday.

3 Where (are – were – did – do) you two hours ago?

4 Cats (are – were – is – was) important in Ancient Egypt.

5 A: (Were – Was – Is – Are) the movie scary? B: No, it wasn't.

6 Cars (are – do – were – was) loud in the past.

7 (Was – Are – Is – Were) there any kids in the playground yesterday?

8 A: Were you at home yesterday? B: Yes, (you were – you weren't – I was – I wasn't).



Lesson 2

• Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1 are very strong birds. Ancient Egyptians loved them.

الدقهلية - إدارة طلخا التعليمية 2024

a) Hippos b) Monkeys c) Baboons d) Falcons

2 Farmers in Ancient Egypt produced a lot of

a) pets b) grain c) gold d) iron

3 "....." means using knowledge to make good decisions.

a) Wisdom b) Grain c) Statue d) Falcon

4 Salwa cats. She loves them very much.

a) kills b) hates c) adores d) represents

5 Some people kept as pets. They were dangerous to look after.

a) lions b) cats c) fish d) birds

6 The farmers need a cat to eat the to save the grain.

أسيوط - إدارة الفتح التعليمية 2024

a) fish b) rats c) crocodiles d) baboons

7 Ancient Egyptians their families to preserve them for a long time.

a) cleaned b) represented c) mummified d) killed

8 The Egyptian Museum is full of of the kings and queens.

a) pets b) statues c) tricks d) pests

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص باستخدام الكلمات المساعدة:

falcons – mummified – afterlife – statues

The Ancient Egyptians loved birds too, especially falcons and the ibis, which represented wisdom. There are thousands of(1)..... ibises in Saqqara alone. All these pets weren't only important for the Ancient Egyptians' everyday life – they were also important in the(2)..... . It is therefore common to find mummified pets and(3)..... .

3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات فى الترتيب الصحيح لتكون جملًا:

1 kept – Ancient – animals – many – Egyptians – as pets.

.....

2 a cat – There – house – in almost – was – every.

.....

3 represented – ibis – The – wisdom – in Ancient – Egypt.

.....

4 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات بين الأقواس:

1 The Ancient Egyptians (love) their pets. SB

2 We (not) like cats when we were young.

3 Omar didn't (traveled) to Paris last vacation.

4 The tombs in Ancient Egypt (be) full of golden artifacts.

5 (Be) there snakes in Ancient Egypt?

6 Mrs Hoda (teach) me English last year.

7 I(go) to the Grand Museum two days ago.

8(Do) you do your homework yesterday?

9 When (do) the plane land yesterday? SB

10 They (not try) to solve the problem in our last meeting.

11 Some people in Ancient Egypt (keep) baboons as pets.

12 Where (do) you go last Friday?

13 Did the Ancient Egyptians (kept) animals as pets? أسيوط - إدارة منفلوط التعليمية 2024

14 (Are) they at the school yesterday? أسيوط - إدارة منفلوط التعليمية 2024

15 What did the wolf (ate)? القاهرة - إدارة الجمالية التعليمية 2024

5 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

Today, pets are still popular in egypt

.....

6 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements:



اكتب فقرة من (50) كلمة باستخدام العناصر الآتية:

"Cats in Ancient Egypt" أسيوط - إدارة منفلوط التعليمية 2024

adored cats – keep them safe – afterlife

.....

.....

.....

.....

Study

Lesson 3

Metal in Ancient Egypt
المعدن فى مصر القديمة

Watch a video

A Trade in Ancient Egypt التجارة فى مصر القديمة

1. Listen and say: استمع وقل:

Main vocabulary

presentation	عرض تقديمى	metal	معدن	trading	التجارة
tools	أداوات	weapons	أسلحة	economy	الاقتصاد
jewelry	مجوهرات	decorations	ديكورات	silver	فضة

Extra vocabulary

countries	دول	rocks	صخور	metal parts	أجزاء معدنية
harder (adj.)	أكثر صلابة	shapes	أشكال	fascinating (adj.)	مذهل
rarer (adj.)	أكثر ندرة	art	فن	culture	ثقافة
craftsmen	حرفيون	sculptures	منحوتات	true (adj.)	حقيقى
iron	حديد	system	نظام	goods	بضائع
mask	قناع	chin	ذقن	beard	لحية

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعـــال منتظمـة

Present		Past	Present		Past
trade	يتاجر	traded	heat	يسخن	heated
melt	يذيب	melted	hunt	يصطاد	hunted
help	يساعد	helped	develop	يطور	developed

Irregular verbs أفعـــال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
buy	يشترى	bought	sell	يبيع	sold
tell	يخبر	told	fight	يحارب	fought

Expressions and Phrases

the most interesting	الأكثر تشويقًا	take out	يستخرج
use (something) for	يستخدم (شيئًا ما) من أجل	on the land	على الأرض
more easily	أكثر سهولة	first found	وجد لأول مرة
That's right	هذا صحيح	one of the strongest	واحد من أقوى

Definitions

trade	تجارة	buying and selling things between countries بيع وشراء الأشياء بين الدول
metal	معدن	something, like gold or iron, that is hard and strong شيء صلب وقوى، مثل الذهب أو الحديد
weapon	سلاح	an object used for fighting or hunting animals غرض يستخدم للمحاربة أو صيد الحيوانات
economy	اقتصاد	the system of how a country's money and goods are produced and used النظام المتبع فى إنتاج واستخدام أموال الدولة وسلعها

Take care!

- لبدء عرض تقديمى نستخدم المقدمة التالية:

(Our presentation is about + موضوع العرض)

e.g. Good morning, our class presentation is about trade in Ancient Egypt.

- لإنهاء العرض التقديمى نستخدم الخاتمة التالية:

e.g. This is the end of our presentation. Does anyone have any questions?

Check

Choose the correct answer: **اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:**

1 Gold and silver are valuable (clothes – subjects – metals – places).

2 We had a school (weapon – trade – presentation – economy) about Ancient Egypt.

3 (Doctors – Kings – Craftsmen – Vets) made pots from clay.

4 The students have a classroom (economy – presentation – trading – metal) about Ancient Egyptians.

Listening script page 10 SB

هذا النص مأخوذ من كتاب دليل المعلم.

2. Listen, read, and role-play: استمع، اقرأ وتبادل الأدوار:



Injy

Our class presentation is about trade in Ancient Egypt. I'm Injy, and this is Dalia. The Ancient Egyptians bought from and sold many things to different countries. This is called trading, Dalia, can you tell us what kinds of things the Ancient Egyptians traded?

عرضنا التقديمي يدور حول التجارة في مصر القديمة. أنا إنجي، وهذه داليا. اشترى المصريون القدماء وباعوا أشياء كثيرة لبلدان مختلفة. وهذا ما يسمى التجارة. داليا، هل يمكنك أن تخبرينا ما هي أنواع الأشياء التي تاجر بها المصريون القدماء؟



Dalia



Thanks, Injy. Well, one of the most interesting things they traded with other countries was metal! The Ancient Egyptians first found metal in rocks around thousands of years ago. They heated the rocks and took out the metal parts. They learned that metal was harder than stone, and that they could melt and make different shapes with it.

شكرًا ، إنجي. حسنًا ، كان المعدن واحدًا من أكثر الأشياء المثيرة للانتباه التي تاجروا بها مع الدول الأخرى! وجد المصريون القدماء المعدن لأول مرة في الصخور منذ آلاف السنين؛ قاموا بتسخين الصخور وإخراج الأجزاء المعدنية. علموا أن المعدن كان أقوى من الحجر، وأنه بإمكانهم إذابته وصُنع أشكال مختلفة منه.



Injy

That's fascinating, Dalia, thank you. What did they use the metal for?

هذا رائع ، داليا ، شكرًا لك. فيم استخدموا المعدن؟

Dalia



They used it to make tools and weapons, so that they could hunt on the land, and grow things like food more easily. Gold was a popular metal for making jewelry and decorations. Silver was also used, but it was rarer. As art and culture were very important to the Ancient Egyptians, many of their craftsmen used different types of metal to make statues and sculptures to sell.

استخدموا المعدن لصنع الأدوات والأسلحة، حتى يتمكنوا من الصيد على الأرض، وزراعة أشياء مثل الطعام بسهولة أكبر. كان الذهب معدنًا شائعًا لصنع المجوهرات والديكورات. تم استخدام الفضة أيضًا، لكنها كانت نادرة. نظرًا لأن الفن والثقافة كانا مهمين جدًا للمصريين القدماء، فقد استخدم العديد من الحرفيين أنواعًا مختلفة من المعدن لصنع التماثيل والمنحوتات لبيعها.



Injy

That's right. But they didn't just sell metal to other countries. They also bought some metals, like silver, which they got through trade with countries. And as they traded more, this helped the Ancient Egyptians develop their economy, until Ancient Egypt was one of the strongest economies in the world.

هذا صحيح. لكنهم لم يبيعوا المعدن فقط إلى دول أخرى. بل اشتروا أيضًا بعض المعادن. مثل الفضة، التى حصلوا عليها من خلال التجارة مع البلدان. وبينما تاجروا أكثر، ساعد هذا المصريين القدماء على تطوير اقتصادهم، حتى أصبحت مصر القديمة واحدة من أقوى الاقتصادات فى العالم.

Dalia

Yes, you only need to look at the Ancient Egyptian artifacts in museums today to see that this is true.

نعم، ما عليك سوى إلقاء نظرة على القطع الأثرية المصرية القديمة فى المتاحف اليوم لترى أن هذا صحيح.





Injy

Well, that's the end of our presentation. Does anyone have any questions, please?

حسنًا، هذا هو نهاية عرضنا التقديمى. هل لدى أى شخص أى أسئلة من فضلكم؟

Check

Choose the correct answer:

1 Ancient Egyptians made (metal – weapons – stone – rocks) that they used to hunt on land.

2 People in Ancient Egypt used (cloth – papyrus – glass – metal) to make tools and weapons.

3 Ancient Egyptians had a strong (economy – presentation – gold – rock).

4 Gold was a popular metal for making (jewelry – weapons – food – medicine) and decorations.

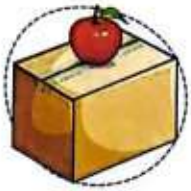
5 Ancient Egyptians got silver through (playing – farming – trade – presentation) with other countries.

B Language Focus

Prepositions of place حروف الجر الخاصة بالمكان

We use prepositions of place to say where things are.

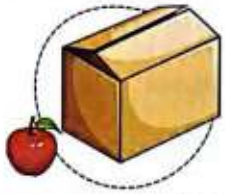
نستخدم حروف الجر الخاصة بالمكان لنذكر أماكن تواجد الأشياء.



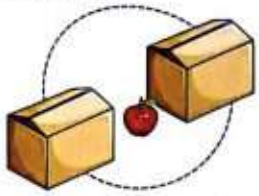
on على



in في



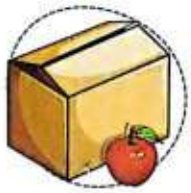
in front of أمام



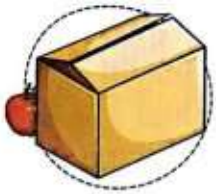
between بين



under تحت



next to بجوار



behind خلف

- للسؤال عن أماكن الأشياء، نستخدم:

A: Where is/ are + اسم الشيء ?

B: It's / They're + حرف الجر الخاص بالمكان + اسم شيء آخر.

e.g. A: Where is the ball?

B: It's under the table.



e.g. A: Where is the mouse?

B: It's next to the TV.



One of the most beautiful artifacts from Ancient Egypt is Tutankhamun's mask, which was found in his tomb. The mask is gold, with blue lines between gold lines. Under his chin is a thin beard. There is also a snake on the top of his head.

ومن أجمل القطع الأثرية من مصر القديمة قناع توت عنخ آمون الذى عثر عليه فى مقبرته. القناع ذهبى، مع وجود خطوط زرقاء بين الخطوط الذهبية. وتحت ذقنه لحية رقيقة. يوجد أيضًا ثعبان فى أعلى رأسه.

Tip! To practice prepositions of place, take a few small objects, such as an eraser, a pencil, and a book. Arrange them on the desk, then ask a partner: Where is the eraser? Your partner should answer: It's under the book. Repeat with other objects and prepositions.

للتدرب على حروف الجر الخاصة بالمكان، خذ بعض الأشياء الصغيرة، مثل ممحاة وقلم رصاص وكتاب. رتبها على المكتب، ثم اسأل شريكك: أين الممحاة؟ يجب أن يجيب شريكك: إنها تحت الكتاب. كرر مع الأشياء وحروف الجر الأخرى.

C Story

3. Listen and say: استمع وقل:

Main vocabulary

wish	أمنية	golden touch	لمسة ذهبية	rose garden	حديقة ورود
castle	قلعة	tears	دموع	precious (adj.)	ثمين

Extra vocabulary

king	ملك	called (adj.)	يُدعي / يُسمي	daughter	ابنة
ground	أرض	strange-looking (adj.)	غريب المظهر	goat	معزة
sick (adj.)	مريض	warm (adj.)	دافئ	special (adj.)	خاص/ مميز
human	إنسان	rich (adj.)	غنى	reward	مكافأة
unkind (adj.)	غير طيب/ شرير	material things	أشياء مادية	gemstone	حجر كريم

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعـــال منتظمـة

Present		Past	Present		Past
trip	يتعثر	tripped	wish	يتمنى	wished
touch	يلمس	touched	celebrate	يحتفل	celebrated
hug	يحتضن	hugged	cry	يبكى	cried
save	ينقذ	saved	return	يعود	returned
change	يغير	changed	pull	يسحب	pulled

Irregular verbs أفعـــال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
spend	يقضى	spent	give	يعطى	gave
think	يفكر	thought	leave	يغادر	left
lose	يخسر	lost	fall	يسقط	fell

Expressions and Phrases

at the end of ...	فى نهاية الـ ...	more than	أكثر من
spend time	يقضى وقتًا	one night	ذات ليلة
trip over something	يتعثر فى شىء ما	feel much better	يشعر بتحسن
would like to ...	يود/ يرغب أن ...	turn into/ to	يتحول إلى
come true	تتحقق (تصبح حقيقة)	walk around	يتجول
ask for	يطلب	come back	يعود
care about	يهتم بـ	any more	بعد الآن

King Midas And The Golden Touch الملك ميداس واللمسة الذهبية

4. Look and read: انظر واقرأ:

The beginning



Many years ago, there lived a king called King Midas. He loved three things more than anything else: his daughter, Marigold, his rose garden, and gold. His favorite thing was to spend time in his garden with Marigold. But he also liked to look at all the gold in his castle.

قبل سنوات عديدة، عاش ملك يدعى الملك ميداس. كان يحب ثلاثة أشياء أكثر من أى شىء آخر: ابنته، ماريجولد، وحديقة الورد الخاصة به، والذهب. كان الشىء المفضل لديه هو قضاء الوقت فى حديقته مع ماريجولد. لكنه أيضًا كان يحب أن ينظر إلى كل ذلك الذهب فى قلعته.

One night, he was walking in his garden when he tripped over something on the ground. It was a strange-looking goat. It looked very sick. King Midas was a kind man, so he took the goat into his castle. There, he gave it food and a warm bed. In the morning, the goat felt much better.

فى إحدى الليالى، كان الملك يمشى فى حديقته عندما تعثر فى شىء على الأرض؛ كان ماعزًا غريب المظهر. كان يبدو مريضًا جدًّا. كان الملك ميداس رجلًا لطيفًا؛ لذلك أخذ الماعز إلى قلعته. هناك، أعطاه الطعام وسريرًا دافئًا. فى الصباح، شعر الماعز بتحسن.

The middle

"I would like to thank you, King Midas," said the goat. "What would you like more than anything else in the world?"

King Midas thought for a minute, then said, "I would like everything I touch to turn into gold."

"OK," said the goat, and made the king's wish come true.

قال الماعز: «أود أن أشكرك،أيها الملك ميداس». «ما الذى ترغب به أكثر من أى شىء آخر فى العالم؟».

فكر الملك ميداس لمدة دقيقة، ثم قال: «أريد أن يتحول كل ما ألمسه إلى ذهب».

قال الماعز: «حسنًا» وجعلت أمنية الملك تتحقق.

King Midas was very excited. After the goat left, he walked around the castle. When he touched a chair, it turned to gold. When he touched his bed, it turned to gold, too. To celebrate, he asked for a special meal. But when he touched the food, he couldn't eat it because it turned to gold. Then, he went outside into the garden to find Marigold. When he hugged her, she also turned to gold!

كان الملك ميداس متحمسًا للغاية. بعد مغادرة الماعز، قام بالسير حول القلعة. وعندما لمس كرسيًّا، تحول إلى ذهب. وعندما لمس سريره، تحول إلى ذهب أيضًا. للاحتفال، طلب وجبة خاصة. ولكن عندما لمس الطعام، لم يستطع تناوله لأنه تحول إلى الذهب. ثم ذهب إلى الحديقة للعثور على ماريجولد. عندما احتضنها، تحولت أيضًا إلى الذهب!

The end

King Midas started crying. "Please come back, goat!" he said. "I can't lose Marigold." His tears fell on his precious roses and they turned to gold. But he didn't care about roses or gold any more—he just wanted to save his daughter.
The goat heard King Midas and returned to change everything back to how it was before.
"Thank you so much!" said King Midas. "I will never think gold is so important again!"

بدأ الملك ميداس بالبكاء. وقال: «عُدْ يا ماعز، أرجوك لا يمكننى أن أفقد ماريجولد».
سقطت دموعه على وروده الثمينة فتحولت إلى الذهب. لكنه لم يهتم بالورود أو الذهب بعد الآن، بل أراد إنقاذ ابنته. سمع الماعز الملك ميداس وعاد لتغيير كل شيء إلى ما كان عليه من قبل.
قال الملك ميداس: «شكرًا جزيلًا! لن أعتقد أبدًا أن الذهب مهم جدًّا مرة أخرى!».

The moral of the story

Your family is more important than money and material things. عائلتك أهم من المال والأشياء المادية.

Check

1 What three things did the king like the most?

.....

2 What was the king's wish?

.....

Take care!

- يمكن أن تُستخدم بعض الكلمات كأفعال وأسماء (nouns/ verbs) مثل:

Noun اسم	Verb فعل
touch لمسة The king had a golden touch.	touch يلمس He turned everything he touched into gold.
wish أمنية The goat made the king's wish come true.	wish يتمنى I wish I could win the competition.
trip رحلة They went on a trip to Luxor.	trip يتعثر The king tripped over a strange-looking goat.
tear دمعة There were tears in his eyes.	tear يمزق Don't pull that - you'll tear it.

Pronunciation

5. Listen, point, and say: استمع، أشر وقل:

/er/



bear
دب



hair
شعر



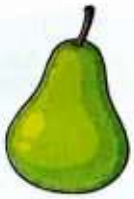
share
يتشارك



there
هناك



rare
نادر



pear
كمثرى



pair
زوج من



air
هواء



tear
يمزق



wear
يرتدى

Take care!

- بعض الكلمات لها نفس النطق ولكنها تختلف فى الهجاء والمعنى:

e.g. (where / wear) – (pair / pear)

Check

Choose the correct answer:

1 A (pear – bear – pair – hair) is a wild animal.
2 I bought a new (pair – pear – wear – tear) of leather shoes.
3 A: What do you want to (where – wear – there – hear) today? B: A dress.
4 That gemstone is very (air – tear – share – rare) - it's not easy to find.

SB

Practice

Lesson 3

• Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة: (للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

1 The king tripped over a strange-looking
a) snake b) beetle c) goat d) sheep

2 King Midas was a man.
a) warm b) kind c) sad d) strange

3 The king took the goat into his and helped it.
a) house b) cottage c) castle d) garden

4 Everything the king touched turned into
a) dust b) gold c) wood d) paper

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1 "....." is when you buy and sell things between countries.
a) Trip b) Trade c) Tear d) Touch

2 The ring is It's made of gold.
a) precious b) cheap c) bad d) warm

3 "....." are objects used for fighting or hunting animals.
a) Tools b) Metals c) Weapons d) Castles

4 Silver was than gold in Ancient Egypt. There wasn't a lot of it.
a) harder b) rarer c) easier d) more

5 "....." is the system of how the country's money and goods are produced and used.
a) Fighting b) Hunting c) Trade d) Economy

6 The baby was crying with a lot of
a) bears b) pairs c) tears d) pears

7 The king lived in a big
a) castle b) hotel c) flat d) apartment

8 Men usually have thick on their faces.
a) birds b) beards c) roses d) tears

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص باستخدام الكلمات المساعدة:

materials – artifacts – tomb – head

One of the most beautiful(1)..... from Ancient Egypt is Tutankhamun's mask, which was found in his(2)..... . The mask is made of gold, with blue lines between gold lines. Under his chin is a thin beard. There is also a snake on the top of his(3)..... .

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات فى الترتيب الصحيح لتكون جملًا:

1 of – There's – brown - pair – shoes – a.

.....

2 room – is – The library – to – the – next – computer.

.....

3 with – other – Ancient – Egyptians – traded – countries.

.....

4 clock – The board – under – is – the.

.....

أسيوط - إدارة منفلوط 2024

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات بين الأقواس:

1 A: (When) is the castle? B: It's on the green hill.

2 My house is (next) of the school.

3 Habiba always puts the pens (in front) to the books.

4 The office is (next to) the bathroom and the elevator.

5 Can you put the book (in) the shelf, please?

6 I can't see him. I think he's (in front of) that tree.

7 The keys fell off (on) the sofa. I can't see them.

8 The hospital is (under) the school and the park.

6 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

How did the Ancient egyptians make weapons

.....



Lessons 4 & 5

Writing & Project

Watch a video

1. Listen, point, and say: استمع، أشر وقل:

Main vocabulary



meteorite
نيزك



dagger
خنجر



mine
منجم



scarab amulet
تميمة الجعران (الخنفساء)

Extra vocabulary

heaven	الجنة	copper	نحاس	bronze	معدن البرونز
amazingly	من المثير للدهشة	early (adj.)	مبكر	fire	النار
possible (adj.)	ممكن/ محتمل	items	أغراض	common (adj.)	شائع / منتشر
agricultural	زراعى	jewelry	مجوهرات	mirror	مرآة
sheet silver	صفائح الفضة	salts	أملاح	display board	لوحة عرض
gallery	معرض	image	صورة	fortune	حظ

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعـــال منتظمـة

Present		Past	Present		Past
mine	ينقب (يستخرج من باطن الأرض)	mined	appear	يظهر	appeared
decorate	يزين	decorated	destroy	يدمر	destroyed

Expressions and Phrases

start using	يبدأ فى استخدام	quite difficult to use	من الصعب جدًا استخدامه	early on	فى بادئ الأمر
easier to find	أسهل فى إيجاده	later on	لاحقًا	the result of ...	نتيجة لـ ...
use (something) for	استخدم (شيئًا ما) فى	it's made of	مصنوع من	get (something) through	يحصل على (شىء ما) من خلال

Important sentences جمل هامة

* The early iron used by the Ancient Egyptians came from a meteorite.
الحديد الذى استخدمه القدماء المصريون فى بادئ الأمر جاء من نيزك.

* Ancient Egyptians believed iron came from the sky and called it "the metal of heaven".
اعتقد القدماء المصريون أن الحديد جاء من السماء ولقبوه بـ«معدن الجنة».

* Early on, the Ancient Egyptians used iron for small items like jewelry.
فى بادئ الأمر، استخدم القدماء المصريون الحديد فى صناعة الأغراض الصغيرة كالمجوهرات.

* Later on, the Ancient Egyptians could get more iron through trade with other countries.
لاحقًا، تمكن القدماء المصريون من الحصول على المزيد من الحديد من خلال التجارة مع البلدان الأخرى.

A Writing

2. Look and read: انظر واقرأ:

Iron in Ancient Egypt الحديد في مصر القديمة

1. When did the Ancient Egyptians start using iron?
متى بدأ المصريون القدماء فى استخدام الحديد؟

The Ancient Egyptians started using iron more than 5,000 years ago. Before iron, they worked with copper and bronze.

بدأ المصريون القدماء باستخدام الحديد منذ أكثر من 5000 عام. قبل الحديد، كانوا يستخدمون النحاس والبرونز.

2. Where did they find iron?
أين وجدوا الحديد؟

Amazingly, some of their early iron was from meteorites. Ancient Egyptian craftsmen made a famous dagger for Tutankhamun's tomb from a meteorite. They also mined iron from the ground. But they found it quite difficult to use because it needs a very hot fire to melt, which often wasn't possible.

ومن المدهش أن بعض الحديد الذى استخدموه فى بادئ الأمر كان من النيازك. صنع الحرفيون المصريون القدماء خنجرًا مشهورًا لمقبرة توت عنخ آمون من نيزك. كما أنهم قاموا باستخراج الحديد من الأرض. لكنهم وجدوا أنه من الصعب جدًّا استخدامه لأنه يحتاج إلى نار ساخنة جدًّا للذوبان، وهو أمر لم يكن ممكنًا فى كثير من الأحيان.

3. Why did they think iron was special?
لماذا اعتقدوا أن الحديد مميز؟

They thought iron was special because they believed it came from the sky (because of the meteorites). They called it "the metal of heaven". For them, iron was more precious than gold because it was rarer.

اعتقد المصريون القدماء أن الحديد مميز لأنهم اعتقدوا أنه جاء من السماء (بسبب النيازك).وأطلقوا عليها اسم «معدن الجنة».بالنسبة لهم كان الحديد أغلى من الذهب لأنه كان أكثر ندرة.

4. What did they use iron for?
فيم استخدموا الحديد؟

Early on, the Ancient Egyptians used iron for small items, like jewelry. Copper and bronze were common metals for tools because they were easier to find. But later on, iron agricultural tools and weapons began to appear. This was the result of the Ancient Egyptians getting more iron through trade with other countries.

فى بادئ الأمر، استخدم المصريون القدماء الحديد للأغراض الصغيرة، مثل المجوهرات. كان النحاس والبرونز من المعادن الشائعة للأدوات لأنها كانت أسهل فى العثور عليها. ولكن فى وقت لاحق، بدأت الأدوات الزراعية والأسلحة الحديدية فى الظهور. وكان ذلك نتيجة حصول المصريين القدماء على المزيد من الحديد من خلال التجارة مع البلدان الأخرى.

How to write a fact file كيفية كتابة ملف حقائق

1. Research facts.
ابحث عن الحقائق

2. Use formal language and the past tense.
استخدم اللغة الرسمية وزمن الماضي.

3. Use correct English.
استخدم لغة إنجليزية صحيحة

4. Divide the text into questions.
قسم النص إلى أسئلة.
e.g. (When/ Why/ Where/ What)

e.g.

When did the Ancient Egyptians start using silver?
متى بدأ المصريون القدماء فى استخدام الفضة؟

Ancient Egyptians started using silver from around 4,500 years ago.
بدأ المصريون القدماء فى استخدام الفضة منذ حوالى ٤٥٠٠ عام.

Where did they find the silver?
أين وجدوا الفضة؟

There weren't many silver mines in Egypt, so we think they brought it from other countries through trade.
لم يكن هناك الكثير من مناجم الفضة فى مصر، لذلك نعتقد أنهم جلبوها من بلدان أخرى عن طريق التجارة.

What did they use silver for?
فيم استخدموا الفضة؟

They used it to make jewelry and mirrors. They also used sheet silver to decorate statues.
واستخدموها لصنع المجوهرات والمرايا. كما استخدموا صفائح الفضة لتزيين التماثيل.

Why don't we find many silver Ancient Egyptian artifacts?
لماذا لا نجد الكثير من التحف الفضية المصرية القديمة؟

Because silver is not very durable. Sadly, the salts in the tombs destroyed a lot of it, so we cannot see very much of it today.
لأن الفضة ليست متينة للغاية. من المؤسف أن الأملاح الموجودة فى المقابر دمرت الكثير منها، لذلك لا يمكننا رؤية الكثير منها اليوم.

B Project

Make Artifact Display Boards صنع لوحات عرض القطع الأثرية

To make a display board about an artifact, think and research, and then make notes:
لتصمم لوحة عرض حول قطعة أثرية، فكر وابحث، ثم قم بتدوين الملاحظات:

1. What is it? ما هو؟
2. Where is it from? من أين هو؟
3. How old is it? كم عمره؟
4. What is it made of? مما يُصنع؟
5. What was it used for? فيم كان يُستخدم؟

E.g.



What is it? | Where is it from? | How old is it?

Scarab Amulet تميمة الجعران

Egypt مصر

This scarab amulet is from Ancient Egypt and is more than three thousand years old. It is made of copper. People wore jewelry with the image of a scarab to protect them and bring them good fortune.

تميمة الجعران هذه تعود لمصر القديمة وعمرها أكثر من 3.000 عام. مصنوعة من النحاس. ارتدى الناس مجوهرات عليها صورة التميمة لتحميهم وتجلب لهم الحظ الجيد.

What was it used for? | What is it made of?

Practice

Lessons 4 & 5

• Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1 Iron, ..., and bronze are metals that Ancient Egyptians used.
a) fire b) copper c) grain d) meteorite

2 Early iron that Ancient Egyptians used came from
a) mines b) earth c) meteorites d) seas

3 It was quite difficult to use iron as it needed very hot to melt it.
a) metal b) meteorite c) craftsmen d) fire

4 Ancient Egyptians called iron "the metal of".
a) heaven b) fire c) earth d) meteorite

5 For Ancient Egyptians, iron was more precious than gold, as it was
a) cheaper b) weaker c) deeper d) rarer

6 Early on, Ancient Egyptians used iron to make small items like
a) houses b) fruits c) jewelry d) grains

7 Ancient Egyptians believed the scarab could bring them good
a) job b) money c) fortune d) friends

8 "....." is a metal.
a) Wood b) Copper c) Plastic d) Soil

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص باستخدام الكلمات المساعدة:

Modern – protect – copper – three

الدقهلية - إدارة شربين 2024

The scarab amulet is from Ancient Egypt and it is more than(1)..... thousand years old. It is made of(2)..... . People wore jewelry with the image of a scarab to(3)..... them and bring them good fortune.

3 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

Iron was a special metal in Ancient Egypt. It wasn't only durable, but it was also very rare and valuable. Ancient Egyptians started using iron more than 5,000 years ago. Before it, they worked with copper and bronze. The early iron that Ancient Egyptians used, came from a meteorite. That's why Ancient Egyptians called it "the metal of heaven." As it was more precious and rarer than gold, Ancient Egyptians used it to make small items like jewelry. Later on, around 3,000 years ago, iron agricultural tools and weapons began to appear.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 Iron was durable and in Ancient Egypt.

a) cheap b) common c) valuable d) inexpensive

2 The underlined word "rare" means

a) uncommon b) common c) too much d) many

B Answer the following questions:

3 When did the Ancient Egyptians start using iron?

.....

4 What did Ancient Egyptians use iron for?

.....

5 Summarize the text in two sentences.

.....

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات فى الترتيب الصحيح لتكون جملًا:

1 weren't – Egypt – mines – There – silver – in – many.

.....

2 use – What – iron – Ancient – Egyptians – for – did?

.....

3 amulet – is – made – A scarab – of – copper.

.....

4 early – The – iron – a meteorite – came – from.

.....

5 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

copper and bronze were common in Ancient Egypt

.....

6 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة من (50) كلمة باستخدام العناصر الآتية:

مجاب عنه صفحة 264

"Iron in Ancient Egypt"

Where did they find iron? – What did they use iron for?

.....

.....

.....

.....

Unit 7 REVIEW



يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من مراجعة أهم الأجزاء التى وردت بالوحدة.

Lesson (1)

gold	ذهب	granite	جرانيت
glass	زجاج	clay	طين/ صلصال
materials	مواد/ خامات	the Museum of Ancient History	متحف التاريخ القديم
artifacts	قطع أثرية/ تحف فنية	fascinating	مذهل
Tutankhamun	توت عنخ آمون	pots	أوانى / أوعية
guide	مرشد	valuable	قيم/ ثمين
durable	متين	stone	حجر
tomb	مقبرة	reason	سبب
primary school	مدرسة ابتدائية	parents	والدين

Lesson (2)

rat	جرذ	monkey	قرد
baboon	قرد البابون	crocodile	تمساح
hippo	فرس النهر	falcon	صقر
ibis	طائر أبو منجل	snake	ثعبان
pets	حيوانات أليفة	pests	آفات
grain	حبوب	wisdom	حكمة
dangerous	خطير	boat ride	جولة بالقارب
afterlife	الحياة بعد الموت	popular	معروف/ منتشر
common	شائع	turtles	سلاحف بحرية
mummified	مُحنط	local	محلى

Lesson (3)

presentation	عرض تقديمى	metal	معدن
trading	التجارة	weapons	أسلحة
economy	الاقتصاد	countries	دول
tools	أدوات	jewelry	مجوهرات
decorations	ديكورات	precious	ثمين
craftsmen	حرفيون	sculptures	منحوتات
king	ملك	golden touch	لمسة ذهبية
daughter	ابنة	tears	دموع
rose garden	حديقة ورود	strange-looking	غريب المنظر
wish	أمنية	goods	بضائع

Lessons (4 & 5)

meteorite	نيزك	dagger	خنجر
mine	منجم/ ينقب	gallery	معرض
copper	نحاس	bronze	معدن البرونز
scarab amulet	تميمة الجعران	fire	نار
salts	أملاح	sheet silver	صفائح الفضة
heaven	جنة	agricultural	زراعى
fortune	حظ	image	صورة
items	أغراض	display board	لوحة عرض

Language Focus

The Past Simple Tense

Affirmative Form:

Subject (الفاعل) + التصريف الثانى للفعل

- Sama traveled to London last year.

Negative Form:

Subject (الفاعل) + didn't + (inf.) الفعل فى المصدر

People in the past didn't have cars.

Yes/No Question:

Question: A: Did + subject (الفاعل) + (inf.) الفعل فى المصدر?

Answer: B: Yes, / B: No, | subject (الفاعل) | did. / didn't.

A: Did you do your homework?
B: Yes, I did. **OR** No, I didn't

Wh- Question:

A: Wh- word (كلمة الاستفهام) | did | subject | (inf.) الفعل فى المصدر...?

A: What did Talia do last night? B: She watched TV, then she went to bed.

Unit 7 CHECK YOUR VOCABULARY



تأكد من حفظك لكلمات الدروس قبل البدء فى إجابة اختبار الوحدة.

Lesson 1

تحف فنية/ قطع أثرية		ذهب	
مناخ		طين/ صلصال	
حجر		جرانيت	
نسر		زجاج	
قيم/ ثمين		مرشد	
متين		مقبرة	
نبات البردى		أوانى / أوعية	

Lesson 2

حيوانات أليفة		جرذ	
فئران		قرد	
الحياة بعد الموت		قرد البابون	
تماثيل		تمساح	
سلاحف بحرية		فرس النهر	
حبوب		صقر	
مُحنط		طائر أبو منجل	
قماش		ثعبان	
معروف/ منتشر		حكمة	

Lesson 3

ابنة		التجارة	
ثقافة		معدن	
قلعة		أسلحة	
لمسة ذهبية		الاقتصاد	
مكافأة		ملك	
أمنية		ثمين	
زوج من		دب	
نادر		فن	
قناع		بضائع	
منحوتات		دموع	

Lessons 4 & 5

معدن البرونز		أملاح	
منجم		نحاس	
نيزك		خنجر	
مجوهرات		الجنة	
حظ		مرآة	

WRITING TIME



تجميعة لأهم موضوعات الوحدة

لكى تتمكن من كتابة الموضوعات بشكل مميز، اتبع هذه الخطوات.

How to write about artifacts in Ancient Egypt:

1. We have many artifacts from Ancient Egypt.
2. One reason is + سبب وجود آثار مصرية قديمة.
3. Ancient Egyptians used materials that can last forever.
4. They used + اسم مادة خام + سبب الاستخدام.
5. They also used + اسم مادة خام + سبب الاستخدام.
6. They liked to use gold + سبب الاستخدام.

"Artifacts in Ancient Egypt"

We have many artifacts from Ancient Egypt. One reason is the climate. We have hot, dry weather that helps preserve the artifacts. Ancient Egyptians used materials that could last forever. They used granite to build the Pyramids. They also used clay to make pots. They liked to use gold because it's durable and valuable.

How to write about pets in Ancient Egypt:

1. Ancient Egyptians loved animals and kept many as pets.
2. They particularly loved cats + السبب
3. They also kept animals like + أسماء حيوانات أليفة.
4. They also loved birds especially + أسماء طيور.
5. The ibis + مكانته فى مصر القديمة.

"Pets in Ancient Egypt"

Ancient Egyptians loved animals and kept many as pets. They particularly loved cats because they believed cats could look after them and keep them safe. They also kept animals like monkeys, hippos, and even lions. They also loved birds especially falcons and the ibis. The ibis represented wisdom in Ancient Egypt.

How to write a fact file about an ancient artifact/ object:

1. What is it?
2. Where is it from?
3. How old is it?
4. What is it made of?
5. What was it used for?

"Scarab amulet"

This scarab amulet is from Ancient Egypt and is more than three thousand years old. It is made of copper. People wore jewelry with the image of a scarab to protect them and bring them good fortune.

Unit 7 STUDENT'S BOOK CORNER

يتضمن هذا الجزء أهم الأسئلة التى وردت بكتاب الوزارة.

1 Complete the sentences with the past simple form:

1 The Ancient Egyptians(love) their pets.

2 They (teach) their monkeys different tricks.

3 The crocodiles quickly (become) dangerous pets.

4 The ibis (represent) wisdom.

2 Write the sentences in the past simple:

1 she / not arrive / on time

She didn't arrive on time.

2 you/ understand/ the exercise.

.....

3 they/ buy/ a new car.

.....

4 she/ not be/ at school/ last week.

.....

5 be/ Mom and Dad/ at work/ yesterday?

.....

3 Read and match:

1 trade	a. the system of how a country's money and goods are produced and used
2 metal	b. something like gold or iron that is hard and strong
3 weapon	c. buying and selling things between countries
4 economy	d. an object used for fighting or hunting animals

4 Complete the text using the prepositions in the box:

between – in – on – Under

One of the most beautiful artifacts from Ancient Egypt is Tutankhamun's mask, which was found(1)..... his tomb. The mask is gold, with blue lines(2)..... gold lines.(3)..... his chin is a thin beard. There is also a snake(4)..... the top of his head.

Test Yourself 30

UNIT 7

Listening

1 **Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:** 4
استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة: (للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

1 Tarek and Talia were at the Museum of Ancient History last
a) week b) month c) vacation d) year

2 Dr. Fayez was their
a) friend b) guide c) cousin d) uncle

3 The Pyramids were built with
a) clay b) glass c) granite d) gold

4 Ancient Egyptians could find clay by the
a) farms b) tombs c) lake d) river

Reading

2 **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:** **اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:** 1.5

1 are made of iron.
a) Weapons b) Caves c) Cakes d) Rulers

2 A hot, dry climate can help to and keep old artifacts. الدقهلية – إدارة نبروه التعليمية 2024
a) grow b) preserve c) sell d) beat

3 There were pets and statues of animals in the tombs.
البحيرة – إدارة المنزلة التعليمية 2024
a) mummified b) busy c) dangerous d) noisy

3 **Read and complete the text with the words in the box:** 1.5
اقرأ وأكمل النص باستخدام الكلمات المساعدة:

raise – stone – hunt – jewelry

The Ancient Egyptians traded with other countries, and metal was one thing they traded. Metal was harder than(1)....., and they could melt it into different shapes. They used metal to make tools and weapons so that they could(2)..... animals. Gold and silver were popular metals for making(3)..... and art to sell. Trade with other countries helped the Ancient Egyptian economy to grow.

4 **Read the text and answer the questions:** **اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:** 7

Omar adores reading, especially short stories that he can find in the school's library. His favorite story is "King Midas and the Golden Touch." King Midas loved his daughter Marigold, his rose garden, and gold. One night, the king helped a sick goat that looked very sick. To thank him, it made his wish come true. The king could turn everything he touched into gold. He then hugged Marigold,

who turned into gold. King Midas cried, wanting the goat back, but he didn't care about the roses. The goat returned to change everything back to how it was before. King Midas thanked the goat for his help.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 The king loved his and his garden so much.
a) castle b) daughter c) son d) cousin

2 The underlined verb "come true" means
a) travel b) happen c) go d) need

B Answer the following questions:

3 What does Omar adore?
.....

4 Where can Omar find the short stories?
.....

5 What was the king's wish?
.....

Writing

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:
ضع الكلمات فى الترتيب الصحيح لتكون جملًا: (1)

1 using – silver – They – many – ago – started – years.
.....

2 in good – The climate – the tomb – kept – condition.
.....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:
اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات بين الأقواس: (4)

1 There is a photo (in) the wall.
2 They (doesn't) use plastic in the past.

البحيرة - إدارة المنزلة التعليمية 2024

7 Punctuate the following:
ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى: (4)

1 farmers needed cats to save the grain
2 ancient egyptians started using iron more than 5000 years ago.

8 Write a text of FIFTY(50) words using the following guiding elements:
اكتب فقرة من 50 كلمة باستخدام العناصر الآتية: (7)

اجاب عنه صفحة 284

"Metal in Ancient Egypt"

الدقهلية - إدارة شربين 2024

harder than stone - tools and weapons
.....
.....
.....
.....



Assess your progress ★ ★ ★ ★ ★

< 50%	50 : 64%	65 : 84%	85 : 100%
Study again	Practice more	Solve more exams	Well done!

Unit 7 AL-AZHAR CORNER



تحتوى هذه الصفحة على أسئلة خاصة بمواصفات الأزهر.

1 Read and complete the dialogue: اقرأ وأكمل المحادثة:

statues – Did – great – went – do

Nour: Hi, Heba. you have a nice weekend?
Heba: Hi, Nour! Yes, I to the Egyptian Museum.
Nour: What did you there?
Heba: I saw a lot of beautiful
Nour: Wow, it's

2 Choose the correct answer: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1 (Trade – Economy – Metal) is something hard like gold and iron.
2 The cat is (in – on – between) the couch and the closet.
3 We use (museums – materials – pets) to make different things.
4 Nadia (visit – visited – visiting) the Museum of Ancient History last week.
5 The (statue – iron – metal) was amazing. It looked exactly like the real king.
6 What did you (study – studying – studied) yesterday?
7 Hani (doesn't – don't – didn't) go hiking last week.
8 A: (What – Where – When) is the school? B: It's behind my house.
9 A (metal – weapon – glass) is an object used for fighting or hunting animals.
10 The Ancient Egyptians used (gold – silver – clay) to make pots. They found it by the River Nile.

3 Reorder the words to make correct sentences: أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكون جملًا صحيحة:

1 liked to – Ancient – Egyptians – gold – use.
.....
2 did – When – start – iron – Ancient – Egyptians – using?
.....
3 preserve – The dry – the – climate – helped – artifacts.
.....
4 last – Where – you – did – go – weekend?
.....
5 didn't – He – meet – at the – anyone – party.
.....

Unit 8

Toys and games

دُمى وألعاب



Unit Objectives

- By the end of this unit, the student will be able to:

- listen, read, discuss, and write about games, toys, and activities.
- listen to and read a dialog about old toys and games.
- use verb intensifiers.
- listen to and understand a story about a toy.
- use verbs that are followed by -ing.
- spell and say words containing "gh" or "ght".
- use pie charts and bar graphs.
- write a description of his/her favorite game.
- design and make a simple board game.

- بنهاية هذه الوحدة، سيكون التلميذ قادرًا على أن:

- يستمع ويقرأ ويناقش ويكتب عن الألعاب والدمى والأنشطة.
- يستمع إلى ويقرأ محادثة عن الدمى القديمة والألعاب.
- يستخدم معززات الأفعال والصفات.
- يستمع إلى ويفهم قصة عن دمية.
- يستخدم الأفعال التى يليها ing-.
- ينهجئ ويقول الكلمات التى تحتوى على "gh" و"ght".
- يستخدم الرسوم البيانية العمودية والدائرية.
- يكتب وصفًا للعبته المفضلة.
- يقوم بتصميم وصنع لعبة لوحية بسيطة.

Did you know?

- Playing is good for us in lots of different ways. When we play, we feel happy. We also learn about the world and ourselves. When we play, we learn to solve problems and make friends.

Find out!

- Ancient Egyptians enjoyed many *physical activities like *archery, *rowing, and *wrestling. They also played board games like "*Hounds and Jackals" which was very similar to *chess.

* physical activities	أنشطة بدنية	* archery	الرماية	* rowing	التجديف
* wrestling	المصارعة	* Hounds and Jackals	لعبة الكلاب والثعالب	* chess	الشطرنج



Lesson 1

A Box of Toys

صندوق اللعب

Watch a video

1. Listen, point, and say: استمع، أشر وقل:

Main vocabulary



doll's house

بيت الدمية



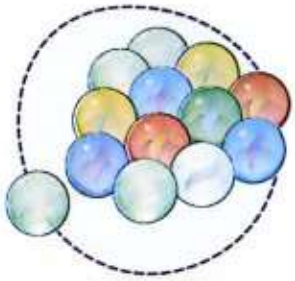
rollerblades

حذاء التزحلق



action figure

مجسم لشخصية كرتونية



marbles

كرات زجاجية (بلى)



board game

لعبة لوحية



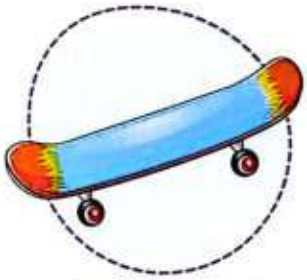
cuddly toy

دمية محشوة (دبدوب)



train set

لعبة القطار



skateboard

لوح التزحلق

Extra vocabulary

actually	في الواقع	younger (adj.)	أصغر سنًّا	favorite (adj.)	مفضل
though	على الرغم من ذلك	brilliant (adj.)	رائع	cool (adj.)	رائع
older (adj.)	أكبر سنًّا	later	لاحقًا	successful (adj.)	ناجح

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعـــال منتظمـة

Present		Past	Present		Past
love	يحب	loved	want	يريد	wanted
try	يجرب	tried	invent	يخترع	invented

Irregular verbs أفعـــال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
find	يجد	found	know	يعرف	knew
beat	يهزم	beat	think	يفكر	thought

Expressions and Phrases

on the weekend	فى عطلة نهاية الأسبوع	make up	يؤلف/ يخترع
have a go	يجرب	after a while	بعد فترة قصيرة
very often	فى كثير من الأحيان	so do I!	وأنا كذلك!
look for	يبحث عن	I'd love to ...	أود أن ...

Definitions

beat	يهزم	be more successful than someone in a game أن تكون أكثر نجاحًا من شخص ما فى لعبة
have a go	يجرب	try something يجرب شيئًا ما
made up	ألف/اخترع	thought of or invented فكر فى أو اخترع شيئًا

Important sentences جمل هامة

* Yaseen found a box of his old toys at his grandma's house.
لقد وجد ياسين صندوق ألعابه القديم فى منزل جدته.
* Yaseen loved playing with his old action figures.
أحب ياسين اللعب بمجسمات الشخصيات الكرتونية القديمة.
* When Adam was younger, his favorite toy was a train set.
عندما كان آدم صغيرًا، كان القطار لعبته المفضلة.
* Fares had a skateboard. He could go really fast after a while.
كان لدى فارس لوح تزلج، وكان بإمكانه التحرك بسرعة كبيرة بعد فترة.
* Fares played board games with his older brother, but he usually beat Fares.
كان فارس يلعب الألعاب اللوحية مع أخيه الأكبر ولكنه كان عادة يهزم «فارس».

Take care!

لاحظ الفرق بين استخدامات الفعل "love".

I love + (inf.) + ing

e.g. I love playing with my toys.

e.g. Brilliant! – Cool!

I'd love to + (inf.)

e.g. I'd love to see my cuddly toy.

لاحظ أن بعض الكلمات التى تعبر عن الدهشة والمفاجأة نضع بعدها علامة التعجب.

Check

Choose the correct answer:

1 (Skateboards – Marbles – Boots – Rollerblades) are shoes with wheels that are used for skating.
2 My favorite (cuddly toys – action figures – skateboards – board games) are Tom & Jerry.
3 The children like playing with (train set – doll's house – board game – skateboard). It is a small house with furniture and tiny rooms.
4 A: Can I have a (play – dance – go – walk) on your guitar? B: Sure, you can try it.
5 If you (invent – beat – try – make) other players in a game, you win.

2. Listen, read, and role-play: استمع، اقرأ وتبادل الأدوار:



Fares

Did you visit your grandma on the weekend, Yaseen?

هل زرت جدتك فى عطلة نهاية الأسبوع، ياسين؟

Yaseen



Yes, I did. I found a box of my old toys at her house, actually.

نعم، لقد زرتها. وجدت صندوقًا من ألعابى القديمة فى منزلها، فى الواقع.



Adam

What did you find in there?

ماذا وجدت هناك؟

Yaseen



There was an action figure. I loved playing with it!

كان هناك مجسم لشخصية كرتونية. أحببت اللعب به!



Fares

I loved playing with my old action figures, too! I made up lots of games for them.

أحببت اللعب بمجسمات الشخصيات الكرتونية القديمة الخاصة بى، أيضًا! لقد قمت باختراع الكثير من الألعاب لهم.

Adam



When I was younger, my favorite toy was a train set.

عندما كنت أصغر سنًّا، كانت لعبتى المفضلة القطار.



Yaseen

I didn't have a train set, but my sister had a big doll's house. We both played with it. I don't know where it is now. I found my old rollerblades, though.

لم يكن لدىَّ قطار، ولكن كان لدى أختى منزل دمية كبير. لعب كلانا به. لا أعرف أين هو الآن. على الرغم من ذلك لقد وجدت حذاء التزحلق الخاص بى.



Adam

Brilliant! Did you have a go on them?

رائع! هل قمت بتجربتها؟

Yaseen



No, I wanted to, but they were too small.

لا، أردت ذلك، ولكنها كانت صغيرة جدًّا.



Fares

I didn't have rollerblades, but I had a skateboard. I could go really fast after a while!

لم يكن لدى حذاء التزحلق، ولكن كان لدى لوح تزلج. استطعت التحرك به سريعًا بعد فترة قصيرة.

Yaseen



Cool! Did you play board games when you were younger?

رائع! هل كنت تلعب الألعاب اللوحية عندما كنت أصغر سنًّا؟



Fares

Yes, we played board games. I played with my older brother, but he usually beat me!

نعم، لعبنا ألعابًا لوحية. لعبتها مع أخي الأكبر، ولكنه كان عادة ما يهزمني!

Adam



We didn't play board games very often, but we played marbles.

لم نلعب الألعابًا اللوحية في كثير من الأحيان، ولكننا لعبنا بالكرات الزجاجية.



Fares

So did I! I think I'll look for some of my old toys later. I'd love to see my favorite cuddly toy again.

وأنا كذلك! أعتقد أنني سأبحث عن بعض ألعابي القديمة في وقت لاحق. أود أن أرى دميتي المحشوة (ديدوبي) المفضل مرة أخرى.

Practice

Lesson 1

practice more

• Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

1 Yaseen loved playing with his brother Sami.
a) train set b) marbles c) action figure d) board games

2 Yaseen had a small that he thought was good fun.
a) doll's house b) cuddly toy c) skateboard d) rollerblades

3 Yaseen's favorite action figure looked like
a) Ant Man b) Spider Man c) Iron Man d) Superman

4 Yaseen loved making up lots of for it.
a) stories b) books c) games d) houses

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 Mum always stories for my little brother to sleep.
a) takes b) goes c) visits d) makes up

2 Nagwa has a big house that she likes to play with.
a) board b) cuddly c) train d) doll's

3 Can I have a on your skateboard?
a) go b) walk c) house d) train

4 My dad bought me a/an that looks like Superman.
a) doll's house b) action figure c) train set d) rollerblades

5 My little sister always sleeps with her favorite toy.
a) cuddly b) book c) train d) skateboard

6 My favorite toy was the أسيوط - إدارة الغنائيم التعليمية 2024
a) rolling b) skateboard c) skiing d) hat

7 Zeina's favorite toy is a train أسيوط - إدارة القوصية التعليمية 2024
a) sit b) sat c) seat d) set

8 When you someone in a game, you are more successful than he is.
a) help b) share c) make up d) beat

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

أسيوط - إدارة ديروط التعليمية 2024

skateboard – beat – board – house

Nader and Habiba are best friends. They met every weekend since they were ten. When Nader was younger, he loved playing marbles. He didn't have rollerblades, but he had a(1)..... that he could go really fast on. Habiba had a big doll's(2)..... . She had a cuddly toy that was soft and nice. Habiba and Nader often played(3)..... games together to enjoy their free time.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

Hello! My name is Waleed. When I visited my grandma last weekend, I found a box of my old toys in her house. I was so excited to see all my old toys again. When I was younger, my favorite toy was the train set. I loved playing with my action figures, too! I made up lots of games for them. My sister had a big doll's house. We both played with it. I also found my rollerblades. I wanted to have a go on them, but they were too small.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 The general idea of the text is about Waleed's

a) toys b) sisters
c) house d) grandparents

2 The underlined verb "have a go" means

a) like b) try something c) dislike d) invent

B Answer the following questions:

4 When did Waleed visit his grandma?

.....

5 What did Waleed love to play with?

.....

6 What did Waleed's sister have?

.....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1 did – What – there, – you – Omar – find?

.....

2 didn't – very – play – often – We – games – board.

.....

3 he – Did – have – a go – skateboard – on – the?

.....

4 rollerblades – can – You – go – fast – on.

.....

البحيرة - إدارة المنزلة التعليمية 2024

6 Punctuate the following:

hassan really likes playing marbles

.....

أسيوط - إدارة الغنايم التعليمية 2024

Study

Lesson 2

Watch a video

A I was very good at hide and seek كنت بارعًا جدًا فى لعبة الغميضة

1. Listen, point, and say: استمع، أشر وقل:

Main vocabulary



skipping نط الحبل



hide and seek
لعبة الغميضة



hopscotch
الحجلة (لعبة المربعات)

Extra vocabulary

project	مشروع	yet	حتى الآن	hiding	الاختباء
chalk	طباشير	squares	مربعات	skateboard	لوح التزحلق
stickers	ملصقات	helmet	خوذة	knee pads	واقى ركبة
little (adj.)	صغير السن	climbing	رياضة التسلق	imagination	خيال

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعـــال منتظمـة

Present		Past	Present		Past
prefer	يفضل	preferred	practice	يتدرب	practiced

Irregular verbs أفعـــال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
hide	يختبئ	hid	hurt	يؤذى	hurt
fall off	يسقط	fell off	wear	يرتدى	wore

Expressions and Phrases

for a very long time	لفترة طويلة جدًا	really liked	أحببت جدًا
quite good	جيد إلى حد ما	have to	يضطر إلى
at all	على الإطلاق	better than	أفضل من
really good fun	ممتع للغاية	quite small	صغير إلى حد ما
on your own	بمفردك	look like	يبدوا مثل (يشبه)

2. Listen, read, and role-play: استمع، اقرأ وتبادل الأدوار:



Sarah

Hi Rania, have you started the project about toys and games yet?

مرحبًا رانيا، هل بدأت مشروع الدُّمى والألعاب بعد؟

Rania



Hi Sarah. Yes, I started it on the weekend. It's really interesting!

مرحبا سارة. نعم، بدأت ذلك فى عطلة نهاية الأسبوع. إنه شيق حقًّا!



Sarah

Yes, it is. What games did you like playing when you were younger?

نعم، إنها كذلك. ما الألعاب التى أحببتِ أن تلعبيها عندما كنتِ أصغر سنًّا؟

Rania



I thought hide and seek was fun. I was very good at hiding!

اعتقدت لعبة الغميضة كانت ممتعة. كنت جيدة جدًّا فى الاختباء.



Sarah

I was good at it, too! I could hide for a very long time. I also really liked playing hopscotch with my friends. We used different colored chalk to draw the squares.

لقد كنت جيدة فى ذلك أيضًا! كان بإمكانى الاختباء لفترة طويلة جدًّا. أنا أيضًا أحببت جدًّا لعب لعبة الحجلة (المربعات) مع أصدقائى. استخدمنا طباشير بألوان مختلفة لرسم المربعات.

Rania



I thought hopscotch was quite good, but I preferred skipping.

اعتقدت أن لعبة الحجلة (المربعات) كانت جيدة إلى حد ما، ولكنى فضلت لعبة نط الحبل.



Sarah

I liked skipping, but I wasn't very good at it. Some skipping games are so difficult!

أحببت لعبة نط الحبل، لكننى لم أكن جيدة فى ذلك. بعض ألعاب نط الحبل صعبة جدًّا!

Rania



Yes, they are. I had to practice a lot with my sister!

نعم، هى كذلك. اضطررت إلى أن أتدرب كثيرًا مع أختى!



Sarah

Ah, my brother didn't practice with me. He didn't like skipping at all! We often played marbles together, though.

آه، لم يتدرب معى. لم يكن يحب نط الحبل على الإطلاق! إلا أننا كثيرًا ما لعبنا الكرات الزجاجية معا رغم ذلك.

3. Look and read: انظر واقرأ:

My Favorite Toy لعبتى المفضلة

by Youssef كتبه يوسف



When I was younger, my favorite toy was my skateboard. I loved going to the park and playing with my friends. They had skateboards, too, and it was really good fun. We all wanted to go so fast! My skateboard was black, with orange and yellow stickers on it. I had to wear a helmet and knee pads. It really hurts if you fall off a skateboard! I got my first skateboard when I was eight, and it was quite small. I don't use it at all now, because I have a bigger one.

عندما كنت أصغر سنًا، كانت لعبتى المفضلة هى لوح التزحلق الخاص بى. أحببت الذهاب إلى الحديقة واللعب مع أصدقائى. كان لديهم ألواح تزحلق أيضًا، وكان ذلك ممتعًا حقًا. أردنا جميعًا أن نذهب سريعًا! كان لوح التزحلق الخاص بى باللون الأسود، مع ملصقات برتقالية وصفراء عليه. كان علىّ ارتداء خوذة وواقٍ للركبة. إنه يؤلم حقًا إذا سقطت من لوح التزحلق! حصلت على لوح التزحلق الأول عندما كنت فى الثامنة، وكان صغيرًا إلى حد ما. لا أستخدمه على الإطلاق الآن؛ لأن لدىّ واحدًا أكبر.

Language Notes

To talk about things we could do well:
للحديث عن الأشياء التى كنا نجيد القيام بها:

Subject + was/were + good at + noun or (v + ing).

e.g. I was good at skipping.

To talk about things we couldn't do well:
للحديث عن الأشياء التى لم نكن نجيد القيام بها:

Subject + wasn't/weren't + good at + noun or (v + ing).

e.g. They weren't good at hide and seek.

B Language Focus

Intensifiers معززات الصفات والأفعال

We use intensifiers to give a stronger meaning to adjectives and verbs.

نستخدم «معززات الصفات والأفعال» لإعطاء معنى أقوى للصفة والفعل.

really, so, very: جدًا:

We can use really, very, or so to strengthen an adjective.

يمكننا استخدام really, very, or so لتقوية الصفة.

really + adjective صفة

intensifier | adjective

e.g. I was really good at hiding!

very + adjective صفة

intensifier | adjective

e.g. Sarah wasn't very good at skipping.

so + adjective صفة

intensifier | adjective

e.g. Some skipping games are so difficult.

We can also use really to strengthen a verb.

يمكننا أيضًا استخدام really لتقوية الفعل.

really + verb فعل

intensifier | verb

e.g. I really liked playing hopscotch.

quite: إلى حد ما:

We can also use quite to make the adjective less strong. (It comes before the adjective).
يمكننا أيضًا استخدام quite لجعل الصفة أقل قوة (وتأتى قبل الصفة).

quite + adjective صفة → e.g. I thought hopscotch was quite good, but I preferred skipping.

intensifier — adjective

at all: على الإطلاق:

We can use at all to strengthen the negative sentences.
يمكننا استخدام at all لجعل الجمل المنفية أقوى.

at all على الإطلاق → e.g. He didn't like skipping at all.

negative — intensifier

Check

Choose the correct answer:

1 Manal is (not – quite – very – at all) good at reading. She reads four books every week.
2 My brother didn't like running (so – really – quite – at all).
3 I think skipping is (really – quite – so – very) good, but I prefer hopscotch.
4 They (didn't – really – so – very) enjoyed riding their bikes. It was great fun.
5 Nour doesn't enjoy playing outside (very – really – so – at all).
6 Brilliant! I think you are (quite – not – at all – really) good at playing tennis.
7 Salma was really (a happy – happiest – happy – happily). She got the full mark.
8 Amina wasn't good at making up new games (very – so – really – at all).
9 The lesson wasn't interesting (very – really – so – at all).
10 He (liked – like – likes – didn't like) skipping at all.

Practice



Lesson 2

• Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 My cousins liked playing They used colored chalk to draw the squares.
أسيوط - إدارة الغنايم التعليمية 2024

a) hide and seek b) skipping c) hopscotch d) running

2 The government started many new

a) squares b) projects c) helmets d) skateboards

3 They usually play hide and
أسيوط - إدارة الغنايم التعليمية 2024

a) sand b) seek c) salt d) box

4 have four equal sides.

a) Triangles b) Squares c) Circles d) Rectangles

5 I put of animals on my bedroom's wall.

a) bodies b) kinds c) stickers d) tails

6 A: What's your favorite? B: It's hopscotch.
البحيرة - إدارة المنزلة التعليمية 2024

a) meteorite b) city c) paint d) game

7 My mum can make up many fun stories. She uses her

a) stickers b) imagination c) squares d) marbles

8 He always wears a when he rides his bike to protect his head.
أسيوط - إدارة الغنايم التعليمية 2024

a) belt b) helmet c) balloon d) ring

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

hiding – box – colored – quite
الدقهلية - إدارة طلخا التعليمية 2024

I am a pupil in grade six. I liked playing hide and seek when I was younger. It was fun. I was really good at(1)..... . No one could find me easily. My younger sister likes playing hopscotch with me. I help her draw the squares using(2)..... chalk. I thought hopscotch is(3)..... an exciting game, but I preferred other games.

3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1 could – She – for – long – a very – hide – time.

.....

2 often – We – played – together – marbles.

.....

3 did – What – like – you – games – playing?

.....

4 didn't – My brother – like – skipping – at all.

.....

4 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1 We are (so) good at climbing. I think we need more practice.
2 I don't like football (very).
3 They didn't enjoy playing hide and seek (really).
4 It's (at all) hot to go out today. I'll stay home.
5 There are no boys in my group (so).
6 I (so) like your present; thank you.
7 This blue dress is (really) nice, but the red one is better.
8 His English is (quite) good. He speaks like Americans.
9 Nour thinks skipping is (very) good, but she prefers running.
10 This gift is (at all) perfect! I love it!
11 Ali (very) enjoys playing marbles.
12 She was (quite) hungry; she ate three sandwiches.
13 I don't like video games (very) all.

أسيوط - إدارة الفتح التعليمية 2024

5 Punctuate the following:

rania wasn't good at skipping

.....

6 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements:



"Games I was good at"

very good at – quite good at – at all

.....

.....

.....

.....

Study



Lesson 3

Watch a video

A Story

1. Listen and say: استمع وقل:

Main vocabulary

stall	كشك	button	زر
trunk	خرطوم الفيل	sail	شراع

Extra vocabulary

tired (adj.)	متعب	feet	أقدام	lemonade	عصير الليمون
wood	خشب	metal	معدن	boats	قوارب
wheels	عجلات	cloth	قماش	child	طفل
carefully	بحرص	ever	أبدًا / على الإطلاق	machine	آلة

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعـــال منتظمـة

Present		Past	Present		Past
shop	يتسوق	shopped	pick	يلتقط	picked
push	يضغط على	pushed	turn	يعمل /يدور	turned
reply	يرد	replied	laugh	يضحك	laughed
touch	يلمس	touched	imagine	يتخيل	imagined
paint	يدهن / يلون	painted	tidy up	يرتب	tidied up

Irregular verbs أفعـــال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
choose	يختار	chose	let	يسمح/ يدع	let
sell	يبيع	sold	break	يكسر	broke

Expressions and Phrases

go home	يذهب للمنزل	almost finished	على وشك الانتهاء
made from	مصنوع من	enjoy looking	يستمتع بالنظر
make (something) out of wood	يصنع (شيئًا ما) من الخشب	pick up	يلتقط
put (something) down	يضع (شيئًا ما) على الأرض	a few years ago	منذ عدة سنوات
I'll take it	سأشتريها	too old for	كبير جدًا على

We loved playing with our train set لقد أحببنا اللعب بالقطار

Listening script page 26 SB

هذا النص مأخوذ من كتاب دليل المعلم.

2. Look and read: انظر واقرأ:

The beginning

1 Ali was tired. His parents were shopping at the market. It was a hot day. Ali's feet hurt, and he really wanted to go home. "Are you OK, Ali?" asked Mom. "We've almost finished. We need tomatoes from this stall. Wait here, then I'll get you some lemonade." "Thanks, Mom," said Ali. He waited, and then he saw a stall with toys made from wood and metal. There were boats, trains, and animals. Ali's parents were choosing vegetables, so Ali asked if he could look at the toys.
"OK," said Dad. "But we aren't buying toys today!"
"That's OK," said Ali. "I enjoy looking."



كان علىّ متعبًا. كان والداه يتسوقان فى السوق. كان يومًا حارًا. كانت قدما على تؤلمه، وأراد حقًا العودة إلى المنزل.
«هل أنت بخير، علىّ؟ » سألت الأم. «لقد انتهينا تقريبًا. نحتاج إلى الطماطم من هذا الكشك. انتظر هنا، ثم سأحضر لك بعض عصير الليمون».
قال على: «شكرًا أمى». انتظر ، ثم رأى كشكًا به ألعاب مصنوعة من الخشب والمعدن. كانت هناك قوارب وقطارات وحيوانات. كان والدا على يختاران الخضار ، لذلك سأل على عما إذا كان بإمكانه النظر إلى الألعاب.
قال الأب: «حسنًا» «لكننا لن نشترى ألعابًا اليوم!» قال على: «حسنًا». «أنا أستمتع بالنظر».

The middle

2 An old man was sitting behind the stall, making a small cat out of wood. He saw Ali looking at the toys and smiled.
The man picked up a train. "Look at this," he said. He pushed a button under the train, and the wheels turned. When he put it down on the stall, it started to move.
"Do you like trains?" he asked.
"I stopped playing with my train set a few years ago." Ali replied. "But this is brilliant."
Ali looked at the train again. It was small, but very beautiful. The other toys on the stall were amazing, too. There was an elephant which moved its trunk. There was a boat with beautiful cloth sails.

كان رجل عجوز يجلس خلف الكشك ، يصنع قطة صغيرة من الخشب. رأى على ينظر إلى الألعاب ويبتسم.
التقط الرجل قطارًا. قال: «انظر إلى هذا». دفع زرًا تحت القطار، فدارت العجلات. عندما وضعه على الكشك بدأ يتحرك.
سأل الرجل: «هل تحب القطارات؟» .
أجاب على: «توقفت عن اللعب بقطارى قبل بضع سنوات». «لكن هذا رائع».
نظر على إلى القطار مرة أخرى. كان صغيرًا، لكنه جميل جدًا. كانت الألعاب الأخرى فى الكشك مذهلة أيضًا. كان هناك فيل يحرّك خرطومه.
كان هناك قارب بأشرعة جميلة مصنوعة من القماش.

The end

3 Ali's dad came to see. "Wow! My brother and I had a train like this when I was a child!" he said. "We loved playing with our train set." He picked up the train and looked at it carefully, smiling. "I'll take it!" said Dad.

Ali laughed. "I thought you said we weren't buying toys today, Dad!" Dad laughed, too. "Well, I don't think you're ever too old for a train set. I'll let you play with it, too!"

جاء والد على ليرى. قال الأب: «واو! كان لدى أنا وأخى قطار مثل هذا عندما كنت طفلًا!». «لقد أحببنا اللعب مع مجموعة القطارات لدينا».

رفع القطار ونظر إليه بعناية وهو يبتسم. قال الأب: «سآخذها!».

ضحك على: «اعتقدت أنك قلت إننا لن نشترى ألعابًا اليوم يا أبى!».

وضحك الأب أيضًا. «حسنًا، لا أعتقد على الإطلاق أنك أصبحت كبيرًا فى السن بالنسبة للعبة القطار. سأسمح لك باللعب بها أيضًا!»

Definitions

stall	كشك	a large table that you use to sell things from at a market طاولة كبيرة نستخدمها لبيع الأشياء فى السوق.
button	زر	what you touch to make a machine work ما تلمسه لجعل الآلة تعمل
trunk	خرطوم الفيل	the long nose of an elephant أنف الفيل الطويل
sail	شراع	strong pieces of cloth that make a boat move قطع قوية من القماش تجعل القارب يتحرك.

Check

Choose the correct answer:

1 Ali's parents were shopping at the (farm – field – office – market).

2 An old man was sitting behind the (desk – stall – chair – bed).

3 An old man was making a small cat out of (paper – plastic – wood – glass).

4 Dad had a (doll – skateboard – train set – cuddly bear) when he was young.

5 There was a/an (elephant – lion – tiger – fish) which moved its trunk.

B Language Focus

Verbs that are followed by (verb + ing)
الأفعال المتبوعة بـ (فعل + ing)

start	يبدأ	→	e.g. Hana started reading stories a year ago.
continue	يستمر	→	e.g. Moaz continued skipping for a while.
finish	ينتهى	→	e.g. They finished painting their room yesterday.
stop	يتوقف	→	e.g. I stopped playing with my train set a few years ago.
like	يحب	→	e.g. They like baking cakes.
love	يحب	→	e.g. Nour loves making up stories.
enjoy	يستمتع	→	e.g. I enjoy watching TV at night.
prefer	يفضل	→	e.g. I prefer drinking coffee to tea.
dislike	لا يحب	→	e.g. We dislike eating fish.
hate	يكره	→	e.g. Nader and Omar hate drinking tea.
imagine	يتخيل	→	e.g. They imagined flying a plane.

Check

Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1 Salma finished (study) at 7 pm.

2 Adam enjoys (played) tennis with his friends.

3 Hossam dislikes (skip) at all.

4 Waleed and Osama love (sing).

5 He must stop (shout) at the library.

6 I like (walk) in the rain.

7 Can you imagine (wins) a ticket for the concert?

8 Chefs started (cook) in the morning.

Pronunciation

Words with "ght" and "gh"

3. Listen and say: استمع وقل:

(gh) are pronounced like /f/ in these words

«gh» يُنطقوا مثل صوت الـ /f/ فى هذه الكلمات:

- draughts لعبة الطاولة
- laughed ضحك
- coughed كح (سعل)
- enough كافٍ
- rough خشن/ حاد
- tough قاسٍ/ صلب
- laughter الضحك

(gh) are silent in these words

«gh» حروف صامتة فى هذه الكلمات:

- bought اشترى
- thought اعتقد
- drought جفاف
- daughter ابنة
- brought أحضر

Notes

١ تنطق الحروف (gh) مثل صوت الـ /f/ إذا سبقتها الحروف (ou/ au) مثل: cough - laugh

٢ لا تُنطق الحروف (gh) إذا كانت متبوعة بـ (t) مثل: daughter - bought

٣ لا تُنطق الحروف (gh) إذا كانت مسبوقة بـ (i) مثل: night - light

Check

Choose the correct answer:

1 We used to play games like (daughter – brought – draughts – bought) or chess.

2 She (laughed – coughed – thought – drought) all night long. She was very sick.

3 Crocodiles have very (enough – laugh – tough – cough) skin.

4 The children don't play in the lake anymore because of the (drought – draughts – thought – bought).

5 We don't have (rough – enough – tough – cough) money to buy this expensive car.

CLIL: Math

Estimating numbers تقدير الأرقام

4. Look, read, and notice: انظر، اقرأ ولاحظ:

We use graphs like bar graphs and pie charts as a way to present information.

نستخدم الرسوم البيانية كالرسم البيانى العمودى والدائرى كطريقة لتقديم المعلومات.

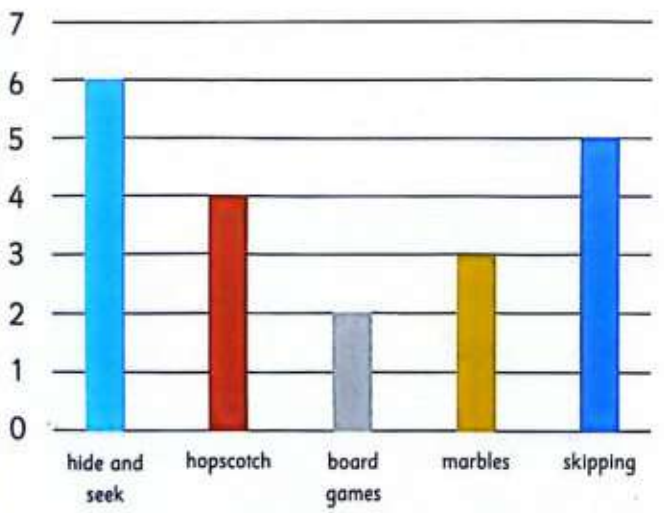
e.g.

- Last week, we had a class vote on the first five free-time games in the class. 20 students voted and the results came as follows:

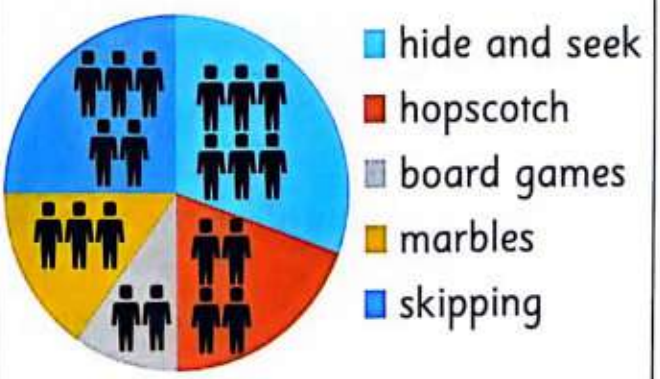
الأسبوع الماضى قمنا بعمل تصويت فى الفصل لأفضل خمس ألعاب لقضاء وقت الفراغ . شارك عشرون طالبًا فى التصويت وجاءت النتائج كالتالى:

Games	hide and seek	hopscotch	board games	marbles	skipping
Numbers of students	6	4	2	3	5

Information presented by a bar graph



Information presented by a pie chart



Practice

Lesson 3

• Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

1 Omar was doing a class quiz about free-time

a) subjects b) games c) projects d) stories

2 Nader loved games like, climbing, and playing football.

a) skipping b) hide and seek c) action figures d) running

3 Reda enjoyed playing and hide and seek.

a) hopscotch b) running c) climbing d) football

4 Sama preferred playing with her

a) skateboard b) rollerblades c) doll's house d) train set

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 At the market, I saw a with many toys made from wood.

الدقهلية - إدارة طلخا 2024

a) stall b) marble c) button d) helmet

2 The is the long nose of an elephant.

a) market b) trunk c) sail d) stall

3 She pushes the to turn the fan on.

a) trunk b) stall c) market d) button

4 You need a to make the boat move.

a) sail b) button c) trunk d) market

5 A car has four

a) sails b) wheels c) trunks d) boats

6 The sail is made of colorful

a) wood b) cloth c) metal d) glass

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

amazing – play – train – touch

اسيوط - إدارة الفتح 2024

Ali was shopping with his parents at the market. He saw a stall that sold toys. A man showed him how a train moved. Ali thought the toys were(1)..... . Ali's dad came to see the toys, too. He liked the(2)....., so he bought it. He said Ali could(3)..... with it.

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1 stopped – She – playing – with – set – the train.

.....

2 liked – They – playing – with – figures – action.

.....

3 from – We – tomatoes – stall – need – this.

.....

4 go – really – I – wanted – home – to.

.....

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1 Adel didn't like (play) board games at all.

2 They enjoyed (read) short stories.

3 Mona stopped (run) to have some rest.

4 We imagined (climb) a very high mountain.

5 He hates (skip) and hopscotch.

6 I started (make) up new games when I was young.

7 Mom finished (cook) dinner two hours ago.

8 Fares and Nader continued (practice) for the race.

9 They finished (paint) the posters and tided up. SB

10 We prefer (eat) mangoes.

6 Punctuate the following:

1 ola laughed when she played draughts

.....

2 ali s dad bought a train.

.....

Study

Lessons 4 & 5

Writing & Project

Watch a video

1. Listen and say: استمع وقل:

Main vocabulary

video games	ألعاب الفيديو	bricks	طوب (مكعبات البناء)	creative (adj.)	مبدع
games console	لوحة تحكم الألعاب	images	صور	problem	مشكلة

Extra vocabulary

description	وصف	fun (adj.)	ممتع	modern (adj.)	حديث
adventure games	ألعاب المغامرات	graphics	رسومات	ideas	أفكار
dice	نرد	counters	قطع اللعب	cardboard	ورق مقوى

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعـــال منتظمـة

Present		Past	Present		Past
solve	يحل	solved	design	يصمم	designed

Irregular verbs أفعـــال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
beat	يهزم	beat	build	يبنى	built
find	يجد	found	win	يفوز	won

Expressions and Phrases

for about an hour	لمدة ساعة تقريبًا	solve a problem	يحل مشكلة
do actions	يقوم بحركات	move around	يتجول/ يتحرك

Important sentences جمل هامة

* I love playing all kinds of games.

أنا أحب لعب جميع أنواع الألعاب.

* My favorite games are video games. I don't play them very often.

ألعاب الفيديو هى المفضلة لدى، رغم أننى لا ألعبها كثيرًا.

* My favorite games are ones where you build cities.

أفضل الألعاب بالنسبة لى هى تلك التى يمكنك فيها بناء المدن.

* I like these games because you can be creative and make something new.

أحب هذه الألعاب لأنه يمكنك أن تكون مبدعًا وتصنع شيئًا جديدًا.

* Video games can be a problem when you play them too much.

يمكن أن تكون ألعاب الفيديو مشكلة عندما تلعبها كثيرًا.

A Writing

2. Look and read: انظر واقرأ:

A description of my favorite game وصف للعبتى المفضلة

My favorite video game لعبة الفيديو المفضلة الخاصة بى



by Belal كتبه بلال

I love playing all kinds of games. I play games outside with my friends, and at school we play hopscotch and board games. I also enjoy playing board games with my sister, although she often beats me!

أحب لعب جميع أنواع الألعاب. ألعب الألعاب فى الخارج مع أصدقائى، وفى المدرسة نلعب لعبة الحجلة (المربعات) والألعاب اللوحية. أنا أستمتع أيضًا بلعب الألعاب اللوحية مع أختى، رغم أنها غالبًا ما تهزمنى!

My favorite games are video games. I don't play them very often, though. I play for about an hour on the weekend. It's fun! My favorite games are ones where you build cities. I've made a really big city using different bricks. It has animals and plants in it, too. I like these games because you can be creative and make something new.

ألعابى المفضلة هى ألعاب الفيديو. أنا لا ألعبها كثيرًا، رغم ذلك. ألعب لمدة ساعة تقريبًا فى عطلة نهاية الأسبوع. إنها ممتعة! ألعابى المفضلة هى التى تبنى فيها المدن. لقد صنعت مدينة كبيرة جدًا باستخدام مكعبات البناء . يوجد بها حيوانات ونباتات أيضًا. أنا أحب هذه الألعاب لأنك يمكنك أن تكون مبدعًا. وتصنع شيئًا جديدًا.

Some of the images in modern video games are amazing. I've got a new games console, which I share with my sister. She enjoys playing adventure games, where you can go to different places to find something important or solve a problem. They can be difficult, but I think they can be fun, too, because they're so exciting.

بعض الصور فى ألعاب الفيديو الحديثة مذهلة. لقد حصلت على وحدة تحكم ألعاب جديدة أشاركها مع أختى. تستمتع أختى بلعب ألعاب المغامرات، حيث يمكنك الذهاب إلى أماكن مختلفة للعثور على أشياء هامة أو حل مشكلة. يمكن أن تكون صعبة ولكن أعتقد أنها يمكن أن تكون ممتعة، أيضًا، لأنها شيقة للغاية.

Video games can be a problem when you play them too much. However, I think they can be great when you do something that is very creative or exciting. You can often play with your friends, too.

يمكن أن تكون ألعاب الفيديو مشكلة عندما تلعبها كثيرًا. ومع ذلك، أعتقد أنها يمكن أن تكون رائعة عندما تفعل شيئًا مبدعًا أو مثيرًا للغاية. يمكنك غالبًا اللعب مع أصدقائك أيضًا.

B Project

Design and make a board game صمم واصنع لعبة لوحية

To plan for the game, answer these questions:

للتخطيط للعبة، أجب عن هذه الأسئلة.

1 How many players are there? كم عدد اللاعبين؟

2 Do you need a dice? هل تحتاج إلى نرد؟

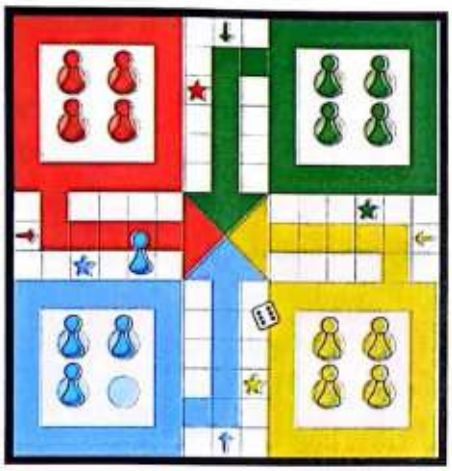
3 How many counters do you need? كم عدد قطع اللعب التى تحتاجها؟

4 Do you answer questions or do actions to move around the board?

هل تجيب عن الأسئلة أو تقوم بحركات للتنقل على اللوحة؟

5 How do you win? كيف تفوز؟

e.g.



There are four players. يوجد أربعة لاعبين.

I need 4 counters for each player.
أحتاج إلى أربعة قطع لعب لكل لاعب.

I need a dice. أحتاج إلى نرد.

I need to do actions to move around the board.
أحتاج إلى القيام بحركات للتنقل على اللوحة.

Tips for designing and making a board game
نصائح لتصميم وصنع لعبة لوحية

- Make your board game using materials such as cardboard, paper, and colored pens.
 اصنع لعبتك اللوحية باستخدام مواد مثل الورق المقوى والورق والأقلام الملونة.
- Make or choose counters. Find a dice if you need one.
 صمم أو اختر قطع اللعب. أوجد النرد إذا كنت بحاجة إلى واحد.
- Write the rules so they are clear and easy to use.
 اكتب القواعد بحيث تكون واضحة وسهلة الاستخدام.
- Check your writing: are the spelling, grammar, and punctuation correct?
 تحقق من كتابتك: هل التهجئة والقواعد وعلامات الترقيم صحيحة؟

Practice

Lessons 4 & 5

• Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 The builders use to build the wall.
a) cardboard b) dices c) counters d) bricks

2 There are a lot of in the album.
a) cities b) images c) places d) problems

3 Video games are great when they are
a) boring b) creative c) easy d) useless

4 Snakes and Ladders game has in it.
a) paper b) dice c) brick d) graphic

5 This building is It was built a month ago.
a) modern b) creative c) old d) important

6 I like games where I can solve or do something exciting.
a) bricks b) friends c) problems d) adventures

أسيوط - إدارة المنشلوط التعليمية 2024

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

players – board – win – likes – counters

Nadia loves all kinds of board games. Her favorite board game is called "Ludo". Here's a description of how you can play it. You need two or four(1)..... to play the game. Each player has four(2)..... to move into their home square to win. Each player has a different color home square. You need to be lucky to(3)..... . Nadia plays Ludo with her friends very often.

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

Ramy loves playing all kinds of games. Ramy's favorite games are video games. He doesn't play them very often, though. He plays for about an hour on the weekend. It's fun! His favorite games are ones where he builds cities. He's made big cities with animals and plants using different bricks. Ramy likes these games because he can be creative when he plays them. Ramy thinks video games can be a problem when you play them too much. However, he thinks they can be great when they help you solve problems or do something exciting.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 Ramy uses to build cities.
a) animals b) games c) bricks d) plants

2 The underlined word "solve" means
a) create b) find an answer c) make d) produce

B Answer the following questions:

3 What are Ramy's favorite games?

.....

4 Why does Ramy like games where he can build cities?

.....

5 How can video games be great?

.....

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1 have – a new – They – got – console – games.

.....

2 with – her – She – friends – plays – outside.

.....

3 enjoys – playing – games – My brother – adventure.

.....

4 great – to – It's – something – do – creative!

الدقهلية - إدارة نبروه التعليمية 2024

.....

5 Punctuate the following:

nada thinks video games are fun

.....

6 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements:

مجاب عنه صفحة 284

"Video games"

for about an hour – build cities – make something new

.....

.....

.....

.....

Unit 8 REVIEW



يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من مراجعة أهم الأجزاء التى وردت بالوحدة.

Lesson (1)

doll's house	بيت الدمية	rollerblades	حذاء التزحلق
actually	فى الواقع	action figure	مجسم لشخصية كرتونية
marbles	كرات زجاجية (بلى)	board game	لعبة لوحية
cuddly toy	دمية محشوة (دبدوب)	train set	لعبة القطار
skateboard	لوح التزحلق	younger	أصغر سنًا
brilliant	رائع	invent	يخترع
older	أكبر سنًا	later	لاحقًا
successful	ناجح	beat	يهزم
have a go	يجرب	make up	يألف / يخترع

Lesson (2)

skipping	نط الحبل	hide and seek	لعبة الغميضة
hopscotch	الحجلة (لعبة المربعات)	project	مشروع
chalk	طباشير	stickers	ملصقات
helmet	خوذة	knee pads	واقى ركبة
imagination	خيال	squares	مربعات
hiding	الاختباء	climbing	رياضة التسلق
little	صغير السن	yet	حتى الآن

Lesson (3)

stall	كشك	button	زر
trunk	خرطوم الفيل	sail	شراع
tired	متعب	draughts	لعبة الطاولة
feet	أقدام	lemonade	عصير الليمون
wood	خشب	metal	معدن
boats	قوارب	wheels	عجلات
machine	آلة	cloth	قماش
child	طفل	carefully	بحرص
rough	خشن/ حاد	coughed	كح (سعل)
tough	قاس/ صلب	drought	جفاف

Lessons (4 & 5)

video games	ألعاب الفيديو	bricks	طوب (مكعبات البناء)
creative	مبدع	games console	لوحة تحكم الألعاب
images	صور	problem	مشكلة
description	وصف	ideas	أفكار
cardboard	ورق مقوى	modern	حديث
adventure games	ألعاب المغامرات	graphics	رسومات
dice	نرد	counters	قطع اللعب

Language Focus

1. Intensifiers معززات الصفات والأفعال

We can use really, very, or so to strengthen an adjective.

e.g. 1. I was really good at hiding!
2. I really liked playing hopscotch.
3. Sarah wasn't very good at skipping.
4. Some skipping games are so difficult.

We can also use quite to make the adjective less strong. (It comes before the adjective).

e.g. I thought hopscotch was quite good, but I preferred skipping.

We can use at all to strengthen the negative sentences.

e.g. He didn't like skipping at all.

2. Verbs that are followed by (verb + ing) الأفعال المتبوعة بـ (فعل + ing)

e.g. start / continue / finish / stop / like / love / enjoy / dislike / hate / imagine

e.g. - Hana started reading stories a year ago.
- Moaz continued skipping for a while.

Unit 8 CHECK YOUR VOCABULARY



تأكد من حفظك لكلمات الدروس قبل البدء فى إجابة اختبار الوحدة.

Lesson 1

لعبة القطار		بيت الدمية	
لوح التزحلق		حذاء التزحلق	
أكبر سنًّا		مجسم لشخصية كرتونية	
مفضل		كرات زجاجية (بلى)	
رائع		لعبة لوحية	
ناجح		دمية محشوة (دبدوب)	

Lesson 2

نط الحبل		لعبة الغميضة	
يختبئ		الحجلة (لعبة المربعات)	
طباشير		مشروع	
مربعات		خوذة	
ملصقات		خيال	
واقى ركبة		رياضة التسلق	

Lesson 3

قوارب		قماش	
عجلات		كشك	
زر		ابنة	
ضحك		شراع	
كح (سعل)		خرطوم الفيل	
لعبة الطاولة		كافٍ	
جفاف		خشن/ حاد	

Lessons 4 & 5

نرد		ألعاب الفيديو	
مبدع		طوب (مكعبات البناء)	
لوحة تحكم الألعاب		رسومات	
مشكلة		حديث	
ممتع		أفكار	
ألعاب المغامرات		صور	

WRITING TIME



تجميعة لأهم موضوعات الوحدة

لكى تتمكن من كتابة الموضوعات بشكل مميز، اتبع هذه الخطوات.

How to write about your favorite toy in the past:

1 I found a box of my old toys and it was exciting.
2 There was a/an + اسم لعبة .
3 I also enjoyed playing + اسم لعبة أخرى.
4 When I was younger, my favorite toy was + اسم لعبة.
5 I didn't have a + اسم لعبة, but my sister had a + اسم لعبة أخرى.

My favorite toy in the past

I found a box of my old toys and it was exciting. There was an action figure. I loved playing with it. I also enjoyed playing marbles. When I was younger, my favorite toy was the train set. I didn't have a cuddly toy, but my sister had a doll's house. We both played with it.

How to write about your project about toys and games:

1 When I was younger, I was very good at playing + اسم لعبة أتقنتها
2 I could + كيف تلعبها
3 My friend Mona really liked playing + اسم لعبة أتقنتها
4 She used + أشياء تستخدمها فى اللعب
5 My brother didn't like + اسم لعبة لا يحبها... at all because + السبب

My project about toys and games

When I was younger, I was very good at playing hide and seek. I could hide for a very long time. My friend Mona really liked playing hopscotch. She used different colored chalk to draw the squares. My brother didn't like skipping at all because it was so difficult.

How to write about your favorite video game:

1 What is the game?
2 How often do you play it?
3 Why do you like it?
4 How can it be a problem?
5 How can it be great?

My favorite video game

My favorite video games are ones where you build cities. I play for about an hour on the weekend. I like these games because you can be creative and make something new. Video games can be a problem when you play them too much. However, I think they can be great when you do something that is very creative or exciting.

Unit 8 STUDENT'S BOOK CORNER

يتضمن هذا الجزء أهم الأسئلة التى وردت بكتاب الوزارة.

1 Read and match:

A	B
1 beat	a. () try something
2 have a go	b. () thought of or invented
3 made up	c. () be more successful than someone in a game

2 Choose the correct word to complete the sentence:

1 I (really / very) liked playing with cuddly toys when I was younger.

2 I thought action figures were (quite / at all) good, but I preferred train sets.

3 My brother was (very / at all) good at football. He always beat me!

4 You're (quite / so) good at hide and seek – you always hide in the best places!

5 This book is not funny (at all / quite).

6 I (really / very) enjoyed playing marbles with my friends.

3 Read and complete with the correct form of the verb:

1 Amal imagined (fly) in a plane.

2 Ghada prefers (play) board games to skipping.

3 We enjoy (make up) stories for our action figures.

4 My sister stopped (let) me share her doll's house because I broke it.

5 They finished (paint) the posters and tidied up.

Test Yourself 30

UNIT 8

Listening

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: 4

(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

1 Fares and Dalia visited their in Luxor last week.
a) grandpa b) uncle c) aunt d) grandma

2 Fares was excited to find his old box.
a) books b) toys c) shoes d) pens

3 Fares loved playing with his old
a) action figures b) doll's house
c) skateboard d) rollerblades

4 Dalia had a/an They both played with it.
a) train set b) action figure c) marbles d) doll's house

Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: 1.5

1 We used different colored to draw the squares.
a) chalk b) stickers c) helmet d) balloons

2 Wearing pads protects our knees if we fall off the skateboard.
a) eyes b) noses c) knee d) mouths

3 My favorite is the train set.
a) meal b) color c) bird d) toy

القاهرة - إدارة الجمالية التعليمية 2024

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: 1.5

skateboard – making – playing – quite

Amina and Nour are best friends. Amina really likes games that use a lot of imagination. She is very good at(1)..... up stories. She has a doll's house, some cuddly toys, and some action figures. Nour really enjoys(2)..... outside. She likes running, climbing, and playing tennis. She was(3)..... good at handball, too.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: 7

Most people think that video games are bad for children. It's true that video games can be a problem when you play them too much. However, they can be great because they can help you do something that is very creative or exciting. They

can help you play with your friends, too. To be safe, you can play video games for about an hour on the weekend or in your free time. There are amazing video games where you can build new cities with different bricks.

A Choose the correct word from a, b, c, or d:

1 The general idea of the text is "……".
a) Children b) Adventure games c) Video games d) Building cities

2 The underlined word "creative" means …… .
a) bored b) clever c) tired d) sad

B Answer the following questions:

3 When can video games be great? ……

4 When can you play video games? ……

5 How can you be safe when you play video games? ……

Writing

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences: (1)

1 do – hide – When – you – play – seek – and?

……

2 Hend – marbles – pretty – very – some – has. الدقهلية - إدارة دكرنس التعليمية 2024

……

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets: (4)

1 People stopped …… (write) letters a long time ago. الدقهلية - إدارة نبروه التعليمية 2024

2 You are …… (at all) good at playing football. You win all the matches.
الدقهلية - إدارة شربين التعليمية 2024

7 Punctuate the following: (4)

1 rana was quite good at skateboarding ……

2 fares had a skateboard ……

8 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements: (7)

مجاب عنه صفحة 284

"My favorite game"

الدقهلية - إدارة نبروه التعليمية 2024

board games – video games

……

……

……

……

Assess your progress ★ ★ ★ ★ ★

< 50%	50 : 64%	65 : 84%	85 : 100%
Study again	Practice more	Solve more exams	Well done!

Unit 8 AL-AZHAR CORNER



تحتوى هذه الصفحة على أسئلة خاصة بمواصفات الأزهر.

1 Read and complete the dialogue:

skipping – like – Because – really – favorite

Nader : What's your game, Ali?
Ali : I think hopscotch is quite good, but my favorite is
Nader : Why do you it?
Ali : I think it's great fun. Do you like skipping?
Nader : Yes, I like it.

2 Read the text and answer the questions:

When Hana was younger, her favorite toy was her skateboard. Hana loved going to the park and playing with her friends. They had skateboards, too, and it was really great fun. They all wanted to go so fast! Hana's skateboard was black, with orange and yellow stickers on it. Hana had to wear a helmet and knee pads to protect herself. Hana got her first skateboard when she was eight, and it was quite small. She doesn't use it at all now because she has a bigger one.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 The general idea of the text is about Hana's
a) friends b) favorite toy
c) helmet d) knee pads

2 Hana's favorite toy was her
a) doll's house b) cuddly toy c) rollerblades d) skateboard

B Answer the following questions:

3 How did Hana protect herself?
4 When did Hana get her first skateboard?
5 Why doesn't Hana use her first skateboard now?

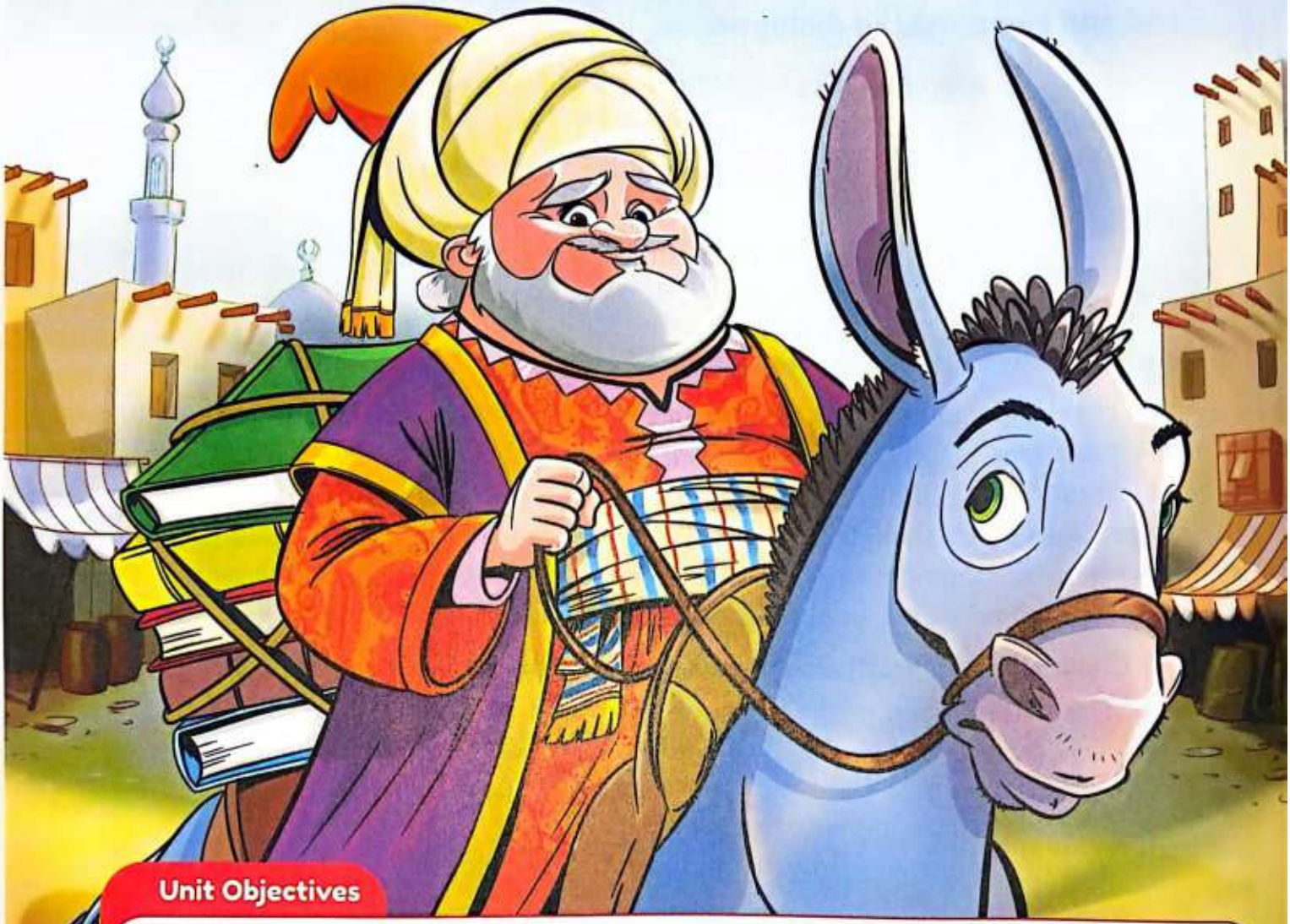
3 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

1 often – How – play – does – she – skipping?
.....
2 loved – They – in the – hopscotch – playing – park.
.....
3 thought – toys – the – Nour – amazing – were.
.....
4 at all – He – like – going on – skateboards – didn't.
.....
5 last – Did – you – visit – grandma – your – week?
.....

Unit 9

What's the story?

ما القصة؟



Unit Objectives

- By the end of this unit, the student will be able to:

- listen and read about Goha and his stories.
- understand and discuss what makes a good story.
- use the past continuous.
- write the beginning and ending of a short story.
- listen to a short story about a boy and a wolf.
- use sequencing adverbs.
- learn how to say words with the sound /w/.
- take part in a cooperative storytelling project.

- بنهاية هذه الوحدة، سيكون التلميذ قادرًا على أن:

- يستمع ويقرأ عن جحا وقصصه.
- يفهم ويناقش ما يجعل قصة جيدة.
- يستخدم زمن الماضي المستمر.
- يكتب بداية ونهاية قصة قصيرة.
- يستمع إلى قصة قصيرة عن ولد وذئب.
- يستخدم ظروف الترتيب.
- يتعلم كيفية نطق الكلمات بالصوت /w/.
- يشارك في مشروع تعاوني لرواية القصة.

Did you know?

- People have told stories for thousands of years. The Ancient Egyptians *carved pictures to tell stories.

Find out!

- My classmates and I know many different children's stories like "Cinderella," "Pinocchio," and "The Frog Prince." The one we like best is "Alice's *Adventures in *Wonderland."

*carved نحتوا | *adventures مغامرات | *wonderland أرض العجائب



Lesson 1

Goha's Stories قصص جحا

Watch a video

1. Listen and say: استمع وقل:

Main vocabulary

story	قصة	son	ابن	review	مراجعة
setting	الوقت والمكان للقصة	countryside	الريف	characters	شخصيات
ending	النهاية (الخاتمة)	narrator	الراوى	moral	المغزى (الدرس الأخلاق)

Extra vocabulary

donkey	حمار	market	سوق	journey	رحلة
tired (adj.)	متعب	both	كلٌّ من (كلاهما)	funny (adj.)	مضحك
clever (adj.)	ذكى	great (adj.)	عظيم	too	أيضًا
details	تفاصيل	popular (adj.)	مشهور	Sudan	السودان
Algeria	الجزائر	Morocco	المغرب	country	دولة
differences	اختلافات	everyone	كل واحد	though	رغم ذلك
main (adj.)	رئيسى	last (adj.)	أخير	lesson	درس

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعـــال منتظمـة

Present		Past	Present		Past
carry	يحمل	carried	pass	يمر	passed
happen	يحدث	happened	disagree	يختلف (لا يتفق)	disagreed

Irregular verbs أفعـــال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
ride	يركب	rode	let	يسمح	let
teach	يُعلم	taught	know	يعرف	knew
learn	يتعلم	learnt	tell	يخبر	told

Expressions and Phrases

take turns	يتبادلون الأدوار	have a turn	يأخذ دورًا
must be	لابد أن (للاستنتاج)	So do I.	وأنا كذلك.
In fact, ...	في الحقيقة ...	all over the world	في جميع أنحاء العالم
known by different names	معروف بأسماء مختلفة	the same	نفس الشيء
(be) right about	على حق في	(be) known as ...	معروف كـ
disagree with	يختلف مع	take place	يحدث

Definitions

characters	the people or animals in a story الأشخاص أو الحيوانات في القصة	e.g. a man – his son – the donkey
ending	the last part of a story الجزء الأخير من القصة	e.g. They both carry the donkey!
setting	the time and the place where a story happens الوقت والمكان الذي تحدث فيه القصة	e.g. the countryside, many years ago
moral	the lesson you learn from a story الدرس الذي تتعلمه من القصة	e.g. You can't make everyone happy.
narrator	the person who tells the story الشخص الذي يروي القصة	e.g. Goha

Important sentences جمل هامة

* A man and his son went to the market on a donkey. رجل وابنه ذهبا إلى السوق على ظهر حمار.
* When the boy rode the donkey, people didn't like it. عندما ركب الولد الحمار، لم يعجب الناس ذلك.
* When the man rode the donkey, people didn't like it. عندما ركب الرجل الحمار، لم يعجب الناس ذلك.
* When they both rode the donkey, people didn't like it. عندما ركب كلاهما الحمار، لم يعجب الناس ذلك.
* In the ending, they both carried the donkey! في النهاية، حمل الاثنان الحمار!

Check

Choose the correct answer:

1 Before I buy a book, I read a (lesson – detail – journey – review) about it.

2 "Cinderella" is the main (setting – place – character – narrator) in the story.

3 Uncle Adel has a (girl – daughter – son – wife) called Hassan.

4 Pizza is very (popular – clever – funny – bored) in Italy.

5 Dad works for 10 hours a day. He is always (happy – funny – clever – tired) after work.

6 My uncle has a farm in the (city – sea – river – countryside).

2. Listen, read, and role-play: استمع، اقرأ وتبادل الأدوار:



Mom

What are you doing, Lama?

ماذا تفعلين يا لمياء؟



Lama

I'm writing a review of one of Goha's stories. The one about a man who goes to the market with his son and a donkey. The setting is the countryside, many years ago. Two of the characters - the man and his son - take turns riding the donkey because it's a long journey. When the boy rides the donkey, the people they pass say he should let his father ride. When the man rides the donkey, they say that he should let his son have a turn. Then, they say the donkey must be tired. So, in the ending of the story, they both carry the donkey!

أنا أكتب مراجعة لإحدى قصص جحا. القصة عن رجل يذهب إلى السوق مع ابنه وحماره. تدور أحداث القصة فى الريف، منذ سنوات عديدة. يتبادل اثنان من الشخصيات الأدوار - الرجل وابنه - على ركوب الحمار لأنها رحلة طويلة. عندما يركب الصبى الحمار، يقول الناس الذين يمران بهم إنه يجب أن يترك والده يركب. عندما يركب الرجل الحمار، يقولون إنه يجب أن يترك ابنه ليأخذ دوره. ثم يقولون لا بد أن الحمار متعب. وفى نهاية القصة، كلاهما يحمل الحمار!



Mom

Haha! His stories are both funny and clever, aren't they?

هاها! قصصه مضحكة وذكية، أليس كذلك؟



Lama

Yes, they are. He's a great narrator, too. I love the details he gives about the characters, the setting, and everything that happens.

نعم؛ هى كذلك. إنه راوٍ عظيم أيضًا. أنا أحب التفاصيل التى يقدمها حول الشخصيات، الوقت والمكان للقصة، وكل شىء يحدث.



Mom

So do I. In fact, his stories are popular all over the world. But he's known by different names. For example, in Sudan, he's Jawha. In Algeria, he's Jeha, and in Morocco, he's Jha.

وأنا أيضًا. فى الواقع، قصصه مشهورة فى جميع أنحاء العالم. لكنه معروف بأسماء مختلفة. على سبيل المثال، فى السودان، هو جُحا، فى الجزائر اسمه جِحا، وفى المغرب جها.



Lama

Are the stories the same in every country?

هل القصص هى نفسها فى كل بلد؟



Mom

There are some differences, but they all have a moral that Goha wants to teach us. What do you think is the moral of this story?

هناك بعض الاختلافات، لكن جميعها لديها مغزى يريد جحا أن يعلمنا إياه. ما رأيك فى المغزى من هذه القصة؟

Lama



That you can't make everyone happy.

أنه لا يمكنك إسعاد الجميع.



Mom

I think Goha is right about that!

أنا أعتقد أن جحا على حق فى ذلك!

Lama



Me; too. I'm happy that I know which story to write about, though!

أنا أيضًا. أنا سعيدة لأننى أعرف أى قصة سأكتب عنها، رغم ذلك!

Language Notes

① Expressing agreement:

التعبير عن الاتفاق:

So do I. / Me, too. — وأنا أيضًا.

e.g. A: I love chocolate. B: So do I./ Me, too.

② Asking for agreement with the "question tag":

طلب الموافقة باستخدام «السؤال المذيل» بمعنى «أليس كذلك» :

Affirmative sentence, + (negative short question)?

عندما تكون الجملة مثبتة، يكون السؤال المذيل منفى.

e.g. His stories are both funny and clever, aren't they?

Negative sentence, + (affirmative short question)?

عندما تكون الجملة منفية، يكون السؤال المذيل مثبتًا.

e.g. Ali didn't come to school yesterday, did he?

Check

Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1 A: I love ice cream. B: (I), too.

2 A: I like fruits. B: (Also) do I.

3 They are friends, ... (are) they?

4 They didn't take the bus to school, ... (do) they?

Practice

Lesson 1

• Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

1 The narrator is
a) Lama b) Goha c) the man d) the boy

2 The is the countryside, many years ago.
a) narrator b) setting c) ending d) moral

3 There are main characters in the story.
a) two b) three c) four d) five

4 The moral is that you can't make all people
a) sad b) angry c) happy d) fresh

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 The last part of the story is the أسيوط - إدارة القنايم 2024
a) adventure b) setting c) ending d) characters

2 The of the story is "Never be selfish." أسيوط - إدارة السنطرط 2024
a) end b) narrator c) moral d) setting

3 The is the person who tells you the story. الدقهلية - إدارة طلخا 2024
a) setting b) character c) narrator d) moral

4 are the people or animals in the story. الدقهلية - إدارة دكرنس 2024
a) Endings b) Characters c) Narrators d) Morals

5 The story took many years ago.
a) part b) turns c) place d) out

6 Goha's stories are all over the world. A lot of people know them.
a) popular b) national c) amazing d) silly

7 I read a of the film before watching it.
a) character b) moral c) selling d) review

8 There's a big between happiness and sadness.
a) difference b) space c) way d) lesson

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

donkey – countryside – journey – image

البحيرة - إدارة المنزلة 2024

I'm writing a review of Goha's story about a man who goes to the market with his son. The setting is the(1)..... . They have a(2)..... . They take turns riding because it's a long(3)..... . People don't like it when one of them rides. In the end, they had to carry the donkey.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

إدارة ديروط - أسيوط 2024

My name is Lama, and I like reading the most. My favorites are Goha's stories. I'm writing a review of one of his stories. He's a great narrator. I love the details he gives about the characters, the setting, and everything that happens. Goha's stories are popular all over the world. But he's known by different names. For example, in Sudan, he's Jawha. In Algeria, he's Jeha, and in Morocco, he's Jha. His stories aren't the same. There are some differences, but they all have a moral that Goha wants to teach us.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 Lama is writing a review of a/an

a) program b) accident c) story d) movie

2 The underlined word "moral" means a from the story.

a) place b) lesson c) character d) name

B Answer the following questions:

3 What does Lama like the most?

.....

4 Why is Goha a great narrator?

.....

5 What are Goha's different names all over the world?

.....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1 are – Goha's – very – stories – popular.

أسيوط - إدارة ديروط 2024

.....

2 character – in – is – the story – Who – the main?

الدقهلية - إدارة نبروه 2024

.....

3 known – names – different – Goha – by – is.

أسيوط - إدارة ديروط 2024

.....

4 are – His – and – clever – funny – stories.

.....

6 Punctuate the following:

1 you can t make everyone happy.

القاهرة - إدارة شرق مدينة نصر التعليمية 2024

.....

2 are the stories the same in every country

.....



Lesson 2

Watch a video

A A Message in A Bottle رسالة فى زجاجة

1. Listen and say: استمع وقل:

Main vocabulary

message	رسالة	bottle	زجاجة (عبوة)	beginning	بداية
grandparents	أجداد	beach	شاطئ	sand	رمال
trash	قمامة	paper	ورقة	event	حدث

Extra vocabulary

quiet (adj.)	هادئ	beautiful (adj.)	جميل	granddad	جد
idea	فكرة	the USA	الولايات المتحدة الأمريكية	space	الفضاء
email address	عنوان البريد الإلكترونى	note	ملحوظة	text message	رسالة نصية
newspaper	جريدة	forest	غابة	path	ممر
suddenly	فجأة	scared (adj.)	خائف	journalist	صحفى

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعـــال منتظمـة

Present		Past	Present		Past
surf	يركب الأمواج	surfed	fold	يطوى	folded
email	يراسل (بالإيميل)	emailed	follow	يتبع	followed

Irregular verbs أفعـــال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
throw	يقذف/ يرمى	threw	read	يقرأ	read
forget	ينسى	forgot	send	يرسل	sent
ring	يرن	rang	shine	يشرق	shone

Expressions and Phrases

by the sea	بجانب البحر	one day, ...	ذات يوم
Let's + (inf.)	هيا بنا (للاقتراح)	a piece of paper	ورقة
throw ... out to sea	يرمى ... فى البحر	back at the house	عودة للمنزل
come in	يدخل	throw ... into	يرمى ... فى
walk his dog	يمشى كلبه	arrive home	يصل للمنزل
come home	يعود للمنزل	grow up	يكبر
score goal	يسجل هدف	along the path	على طول الطريق
in the distance	من بعيد	a bit scared	خائف قليلًا

2. Look and read: انظر واقرأ:

Tom's grandparents lived by the sea. The beach near their house was quiet and beautiful, and he loved to go there with them. They swam, surfed, and played games on the sand. One day, they were swimming in the sea when Tom saw a glass bottle in the water. "Look, Granddad," he said. "Let's put it in the trash."

"I have a better idea," said Granddad. "Let's write a message in a bottle."

عاش أجداد توم بجانب البحر. كان الشاطئ بالقرب من منزلهم هادئًا وجميلًا، وكان توم يحب الذهاب معهم إلى هناك. سبحوا وركبوا الأمواج ولعبوا الألعاب على الرمال. ذات يوم، كانوا يسبحون فى البحر عندما رأى توم عبوة زجاجية فى الماء. قال: «انظر يا جدى». «دعنا نضعها فى سلة المهملات». قال الجد: «لدى فكرة أفضل». «هيا نكتب رسالة فى زجاجة».

"What's a message in a bottle?"

"You write a message on a piece of paper, fold the paper, and put it in the bottle, then throw the bottle out to sea for someone else to find."



Back at the house, Granddad washed the glass bottle and gave Tom a pen and a piece of paper. Tom was writing his message when Grandma came in the room.

"What are you doing, Tom?" asked Grandma.

"I'm writing a message in a bottle," answered Tom. "Do you want to read it?"

ما هى الرسالة فى الزجاجة؟

«نكتب رسالة على ورقة، ثم تطوى الورقة وتضعها فى الزجاجة، ثم ترمى الزجاجة فى البحر ليجدها شخص آخر».

عند عودته إلى المنزل، قام الجد بغسل الزجاجة وأعطى توم قلمًا وورقة. كان توم يكتب رسالته عندما دخلت الجدة إلى الغرفة.

«ماذا تفعل يا توم؟» سألت الجدة.

أجاب توم: «أنا أكتب رسالة فى زجاجة». «هل تريدين قراءتها؟»

Hello!

My name's Tom. I'm 11 years old and I'm from the USA. My favorite things are space, animals, and the color blue.

What are your favorite things? Please email back to tell me! My email address is tom@beachnet.usa

From Tom

مرحبًا!

اسمى توم. عمرى 11 سنة وأنا من الولايات المتحدة الأمريكية. الأشياء المفضلة لدى هى الفضاء والحيوانات واللون الأزرق.

ما هى الأشياء المفضلة لديك؟ برجاء الرد برسالة إلكترونية لتخبرنى! بريدى الإلكترونى هو tom@beachnet.usa

من توم

The next day, Tom and his grandparents went to the beach to throw the bottle into the sea.

وفى اليوم التالى، ذهب توم وأجداده إلى الشاطئ لإلقاء الزجاجة فى البحر.

Many years passed, and Tom grew up. He and his grandparents forgot about the message in a bottle. Then, one day, Tom was working when Granddad sent him a message ...

مرت سنوات عديدة، وكبر توم. نسى هو وأجداده الرسالة الموجودة فى الزجاجة. وفى أحد الأيام، كان توم يعمل عندما أرسل له جده رسالة...

B Language Focus

The Past Continuous Tense زمن الماضى المستمر

We use the past continuous tense in stories to say what was happening at a particular time in the past.

نستخدم الماضى المستمر فى القصص لنقول ما كان يحدث فى وقت معين فى الماضى.

Affirmative Form: صيغة الإثبات :

I/ He/ She/ It	was	+ (inf. مصدر الفعل + ing)
You/ We/ They	were	

e.g.

1 Yesterday afternoon, John was walking his dog.
2 Ola and I were playing computer games yesterday morning.

Negative Form: صيغة النفى :

I/ He/ She/ It	was not (wasn't)	+ (inf. مصدر الفعل + ing)
You/ We/ They	were not (weren't)	

e.g.

1 Amira wasn't reading yesterday evening.
2 They weren't sleeping at 8 yesterday.

Yes/No Question: السؤال بـ(هل):

Question: السؤال

Was	I/ he/ she/ it	(inf. مصدر الفعل + ing) ... ?
Were	you/ we/ they	

Answer: الإجابة

Yes,	subject (الفاعل)	was/were.
No,		wasn't/weren't.

e.g.

1 A: Was she writing in her book?
B: Yes, she was.

2 A: Were the children playing football yesterday evening?
B: No, they weren't.

Wh- Question: السؤال باستخدام أدوات الاستفهام:

Wh-word كلمة الاستفهام	was / were	subject (الفاعل)	+ (inf. مصدر الفعل + ing)..... ?

e.g.

1 A: What was she doing at 6 am yesterday?
B: She was having breakfast.

2 A: What were you doing yesterday evening?
B: I was studying.

Key words: الكلمات الدالة

all (day/ morning/ evening/ night) yesterday/ at (6, 7, 8, ... o'clock/ am/ pm) yesterday from 5 to 7 yesterday /at this time last week

Check

Choose the correct answer:

1 We (are – were – was – is) doing our homework yesterday at 4 o'clock.
2 (Was – Were – Are – Does) she making a sandwich?
3 The dogs (wasn't – isn't – weren't – aren't) sleeping in the garden yesterday evening.
4 I (cook – was cooking – cooked – cooks) lunch yesterday at 6 o'clock.
5 We (were – weren't – was – wasn't) playing football yesterday morning. We were studying.
6 Mum was (makes – making – made – makes) a cake yesterday at 7 o'clock.
7 What (is – were – was – are) you doing at 9 pm yesterday?
8 She (am – was – is – were) riding her bike yesterday at 11 o'clock.
9 The girls were playing the piano (yesterday evening – tomorrow morning – next week – next year).
10 A: Were you drinking juice? B: Yes, (you were – I was – she was – was I).

We can also use the past continuous with (**when**) and the past simple to show when one action interrupted another in the past.

يمكننا أيضًا استخدام الماضي المستمر مع (when) والماضي البسيط لإظهار عندما يقاطع حدث ما حدثًا آخر في الماضي.

Past continuous
الماضي المستمر

when

Past simple
الماضي البسيط

حدث كان مستمرًا — حدث قاطع

e.g. The children were playing in the park when mom called them out.

When

Past simple
الماضي البسيط

Past continuous
الماضي المستمر

حدث قاطع — حدث كان مستمرًا

e.g. When my dad came home, I was reading a book.

Check

Choose the correct answer:

1 When I (comes – coming – came – to come) back from school, mom was cooking lunch.
2 I (walked – was walking – is walking – walks) my dog when suddenly another dog attacked it.
3 (What – When – Where – Which) I met an old friend, I was walking in the town.
4 Fatima was doing her homework when she (gets – got – get – getting) a text message from her friend. SB
5 When the teacher took a photo of us, we (climb – climbs – was climbing – were climbing) up the tree.
6 We (are – were – is – was) eating lunch in the restaurant at noon yesterday.
7 I was (walked – walks – walk – walking) home when I saw the car accident.
8 My classmate and I (was – is – were – are) studying together at the library.
9 A: What (are – were – is – was) you doing at one o'clock? B: I was sleeping.
10 Adham (was – wasn't – were – weren't) doing his homework, he was playing with his friends.
11 What was he (do – does – did – doing) when you visited him?
12 I wasn't watching TV when you (calling – calls – call – called). SB

Practice



Lesson 2

• Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 I sent a to my friend on his mobile phone.
a) present b) message c) letter d) paper

2 Don't drop on the street. Put it in the bin.
a) trash b) notes c) event d) home

3 My grandparents lived the sea. The beach is near their house.
a) on b) in c) by d) for

4 He wrote the message and the bottle out to the sea.
a) followed b) passed c) threw d) emailed

5 He likes to when he goes to the sea.
a) describe b) surf c) shine d) run

6 My birthday is a/an that happens every year.
a) beginning b) message c) event d) ending

7 Lions live in the
a) sea b) beach c) forest d) house

8 My mom wrote the shopping list on a of paper.
a) piece b) bottle c) slice d) loaf

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

idea – trash – paper – message

محافظة القاهرة – إدارة القاهرة الجديدة 2024

One day, Tom was swimming in the sea when he saw a glass bottle in the water. It was a(1)..... in a bottle. Granddad had an(2)..... . He suggested Tom could write a message in a bottle, too. Tom wrote the message on a piece of(3)....., folded the paper, then put it in the bottle. He threw the bottle into the sea for someone else to find.

3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1 lived – Tom's – sea – the – by – grandparents.
.....

2 beach – beautiful – quiet – The – and – was.
.....

3 his – walking – yesterday afternoon – John – dog – was.
.....

4 6 o'clock – doing – What – you – at – were – yesterday?
.....

4 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1 My pet cat (feed) her kittens at 6 pm yesterday.
2 Ali (doesn't) studying English yesterday morning.
3 (Was) Aya and Nour playing in the park yesterday morning?
4 At seven o'clock yesterday, Hana (do) her homework.
5 Yesterday morning, they were (climb) the mountain.
6 Hana (isn't) studying at eight last night.
7 What (you were) doing yesterday evening?
8 Heba and I (play) computer games when our brother arrived home.

الدقهلية - إدارة دكرنس 2024

9 He (run) when he fell down.
10 When they (see) a dolphin, they were swimming.
11 (What) the light went out, he was studying.
12 I was (sleep) when my father came home.

أسيوط 2024

13 I was doing my homework (where) my mom called.
14 I was reading a book when I (was hearing) a noise outside.
15 Assem (read) an exciting story when his father came.

إدارة الغنايم - أسيوط 2024

5 Punctuate the following:

1 what is a message in a bottle

.....

2 Let s put it in the trash

.....

6 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements:

اجاب على صفحة 285

"A day on the beach"

Where were you?	on the beach
What were you doing?	I was walking with my friends.

.....

.....

.....



Lesson 3

Watch a video

A The Boy Who Cried Wolf الولد الذى صرخ «ذئب»

1. Listen and say: استمع وقل:

Main vocabulary

sheep	خروف / خرفان	shepherd	الراعى (راعى الماشية)	villager	قروى
wolf	ذئب	joke	مزحة	truth	الحقيقة

Extra vocabulary

once	ذات مرة	alone	بمفرده	hill	تل
grass	عشب	lonely (adj.)	وحيد	bored (adj)	يشعر بالملل
field	حقل	tools	أدوات	tired (adj.)	مُتعب
real (adj.)	حقيقى	scared (adj)	خائف	untrue (adj.)	غير حقيقى

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعـــال منتظمـة

Present		Past	Present		Past
rest	يستريح	rested	shout	يصرخ	shouted
save	ينقذ	saved	reach	يصل إلى	reached
laugh	يضحك	laughed	waste	يهدر	wasted
appear	يظهر	appeared	kill	يقتل	killed
annoy	يزعج	annoyed	believe	يصدق	believed

Irregular verbs أفعـــال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
lie	يستلقى	lay	tell	يخبر	told
leave	يغادر	left	understand	يفهم	understood

Expressions and Phrases

work as + (اسم الوظيفة)	يعمل كـ ...	look after	يعتنى بـ
have some fun	يحصل على بعض المرح (يستمتع)	busy working	مشغول بالعمل
worry about	يقلق بشأن	put down	يضع أرضًا
tell the truth	يقول الحقيقة	waste time	يضيع الوقت
call for ...	ينادى على/ يستدعى ...	on your own	بمفردك

Take care!

- يتحول الفعل (lie) بمعنى «يرقد/يستلقى» إلى (lying) عند إضافة الـ (ing).

Listening script page 42 SB

هذا النص مأخوذ من كتاب دليل المعلم.



2. Look and read: انظر واقرأ:

Once, there was a boy called Peter who lived in a village. He worked alone as a shepherd looking after sheep. Every day, he took the sheep up the hill and rested while the sheep ate the delicious grass.

كان هناك صبى اسمه بيتر يعيش فى إحدى القرى. كان يعمل بمفرده راعيًا يعتنى بالخراف. كان يأخذ الخراف كل يوم إلى أعلى التل ويستريح بينما تأكل الخراف العشب اللذيذ.

One day, Peter was lying on the grass watching his sheep. He felt lonely and bored and decided to have some fun. First, he shouted, "Wolf! There's a wolf!" to the villagers in the field below. Next, he lay down and waited. The villagers were busy working, but they were worried about Peter's sheep, so they put down their tools and ran to save them.

فى أحد الأيام، كان بيتر مستلقيًا على العشب يراقب خرافه. لقد شعر بالوحدة والملل وقرر أن يحصل على بعض المرح. أولًا، صرخ : «ذئب»! هناك ذئب!» للقرويين فى الحقل بالأسفل منه. بعد ذلك استلقى وانتظر. كان القرويون منشغلين بالعمل، لكنهم كانوا قلقين بشأن خراف بيتر، لذا تركوا أدواتهم وركضوا لإنقاذهما.

They reached the top of the hill, hot and tired. They saw Peter. He was lying under a tree and he was laughing. "There is no wolf! It was a joke!" he said. The villagers were very angry and said, "Peter, you must tell the truth!" After that, they left Peter and went back to work.

وصلوا إلى قمة التل وقد أرهقهم التعب والحرارة. لقد رأوا بيتر. كان يرقد تحت شجرة وكان يضحك: قائلًا «لا يوجد ذئب! لقد كانت مزحة!». فغضب القرويون بشدة وقالوا: «بيتر، يجب أن تقول الحقيقة!» وبعد ذلك تركوا بيتر وعادوا إلى العمل.

Then, Peter did the same thing again later that week. The villagers were very angry, "Peter, you mustn't waste our time! We're very busy!" they said.

ثم فعل بيتر نفس الشىء مرة أخرى فى وقت لاحق من ذلك الأسبوع. كان القرويون غاضبين للغاية، قالوا: «بيتر، لا يجب أن تضيع وقتنا! نحن مشغولون للغاية!»

Finally, on the last day of the week, Peter was with his sheep at the top of the hill when suddenly a real wolf appeared. Peter was very scared and climbed a tree. He called and called for someone to help him. but no one arrived. The wolf killed and ate the sheep. Peter understood why no one came, and he was very sorry.

بالنهاية، فى اليوم الأخير من الأسبوع، كان بيتر مع خرافه على قمة التل عندما ظهر فجأة ذئب حقيقى. كان بيتر خائفًا جدًا وتسلق شجرة. أخذ ينادى أحدًا لمساعدته. لكن لم يصل أحد. فقتل الذئب الخراف وأكلها. فهم بيتر لماذا لم يأت أحد، وشعر بالأسف الشديد.

Moral! الدرس الأخلاقى!

If you tell untrue stories many times, no one will believe you.

إذا رويت قصصًا غير حقيقية عدة مرات، فلن يصدقك أحد.

Check

1 Who is the main character in the story? SB

.....

2 Why were the villagers very angry?

.....

B Language Focus

Sequencing adverbs ظروف الترتيب

We use sequencing adverbs to say when things happen. They help us to understand the order of events. This makes the text easier to follow.

نحن نستخدم ظروف الترتيب لنقول متى تحدث الأشياء. إنها تساعدنا على فهم ترتيب الأحداث. وهذا يجعل النص أسهل للمتابعة.

e.g. First أولًا , Next التالى... ,

First أولًا → Next التالى → Then ثم → After that بعد ذلك → Finally وأخيرًا

Note

قد تأتى (Next) و (Then) فى الترتيب الثانى مباشرة بعد (First).

e.g.

"The Boy Who Cried Wolf"

a. Peter was lonely and bored. He wanted some fun. He had an idea.

b. First, he shouted, "Wolf"! and the villagers came to help and save the sheep.

c. Next, he said there was no wolf and it was a joke.

d. Then, Peter did it again.

e. After that, the villagers were very angry and said he shouldn't waste their time.

f. Finally, a real wolf came. It ate the sheep. Peter was very sorry.

How to write a story using sequencing adverbs

كيفية كتابة قصة باستخدام الأحوال التسلسلية

First, plan your story, and decide what it will be about.

أولًا: خطط لقصتك وقرر ما الذى سوف تكتب عنه.

Next, write a first draft of your story.

ثانيًا: اكتب مسودة أولية للقصة.

After that, check and correct your spelling and grammar.

بعد ذلك: راجع وصحح الهجاء والقواعد اللغوية.

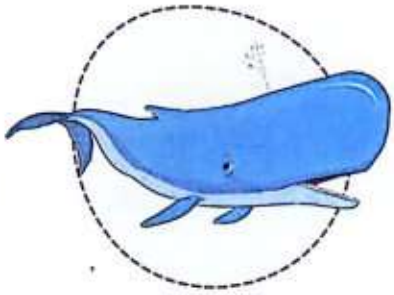
Finally, share it with friends and enjoy.

وأخيرًا: شاركها مع الأصدقاء واستمتع.

Pronunciation

3. Listen, point, and say: استمع، أشر وقل:


water
مياه


whale
حوت


wolf
ذئب


whisper
يهمس

wh /w/	/W/	w /w/
when متى		walk يمشي
where أين		wave يشاور
what ما/ماذا		west غرب
white أبيض		went ذهب

Stressed syllable المقطع المشدد عليه

It is a part of a word which is said more strongly than the other parts.

هو جزء من الكلمة يتم نطقه بقوة أكبر من الأجزاء الأخرى.

When a word has a prefix, the prefix usually **isn't** stressed.

عندما تحتوى الكلمة على بادئة، عادة لا يتم التشديد على البادئة.

e.g. resend (re isn't stressed)

If the base word has one syllable, the stress is on the base word.

إذا كانت الكلمة الأساسية تتكون من مقطع واحد، يتم التشديد على الكلمة الأساسية.

e.g. dislike (like is stressed)

resend	يعيد إرسال ...	dislike	يكره
indoors	فى الداخل	unhappy	غير سعيد
replay	يعيد التشغيل	incorrect	غير صحيح
untidy	غير مرتب		

Practice

Lesson 3

• Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

1 Yesterday, Nada read a/an
a) email b) newspaper c) English book d) story

2 Sami worked as a
a) shepherd b) farmer c) vet d) teacher

3 Sami looked after
a) goats b) cows c) horses d) sheep

4 Sami always
a) rested b) told the truth c) ate d) lied

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 A is a person who looks after sheep.
a) teacher b) shepherd c) cook d) builder

2 It's a funny video, ... it, please.
a) dislike b) untidy c) incorrect d) replay

3 Good people always tell the
a) truth b) lies c) untrue d) joke

4 Omar didn't receive my message. I must it.
a) replay b) resend c) dislike d) whisper

5 To make a cup of tea, ... you have to boil the water.
a) next b) finally c) first d) then

6 A is a very dangerous animal.
a) cat b) mouse c) camel d) wolf

7 We shouldn't tell stories.
a) good b) true c) untrue d) exciting

8 Sarah is funny. She always tells funny
a) tools b) jokes c) fields d) villagers

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

Fast – Next – Finally – First – After that

Here's how to make lemonade.(1)....., slice the lemons in half to get the juice out.(2)....., put some water in a jug, and add lemon juice to the water. After that, add some sugar and stir it.(3)....., pour it in a cup, and enjoy your lemonade.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

My name is Judy. My favorite hobby is reading stories. Yesterday, I read a story about a boy called Peter. Peter worked as a shepherd, looking after sheep. On a boring day, he had an idea to have some fun. He shouted "Wolf!" All the villagers put down their tools and ran to save him. He laughed and said, "It was a joke." The villagers were very angry. One day, a real wolf appeared, and Peter called and called for someone to help, but no one arrived. The wolf ate the sheep. Peter understood why no one came.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 The general idea of the text is about a

a) game b) story c) book d) leaflet

2 Peter's job is to look after

a) children b) students c) sheep d) villagers

B Answer the following questions:

4 What's Judy's favorite hobby?

.....

4 What did Peter work?

.....

5 Why no one came to help Peter?

.....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1 decided – Peter – have – some – to – fun.

.....

2 killed – ate – The – and – wolf – the sheep.

.....

3 were – villagers – very – The – angry.

.....

4 worried about – Peter's – The – were – sheep – villagers.

.....

6 Punctuate the following:

peter worked as a shepherd

.....



Lessons 4 & 5

Writing & Project

Watch a video

The Ending of A Story نهاية القصة

1. Listen and say: استمع وقل:

Main vocabulary

ending	النهاية (الخاتمة)	reply	رد	coast	ساحل
sailing	الإبحار	boat	قارب	excited (adj.)	متشوق/ متحمس

Extra vocabulary

Biarritz	بياريتز (اسم مدينة فى فرنسا)	France	فرنسا	mangoes	مانجو
wow	رائع	both	كلٌّ من	plane	طائرة

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعـــال منتظمـة

Present		Past	Present		Past
travel	يسافر	traveled	reply	يرد	replied

Irregular verbs أفعـــال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
forget	ينسى	forgot	mean	يعنى/ يقصد	meant
come	يأتى	came	feel	يشعر	felt

Expressions and Phrases

grow up	يكبر	have a reply to	يتلقى ردًّا على
you are very welcome	مرحب بك جدًّا	with best wishes	مع أطيب تمنياتى
come into	يدخل	later that evening	فى وقت لاحق هذا المساء
That's a great idea!	هذه فكرة عظيمة!	make sure	يتأكد

Important sentences جمل هامة

* Tom has a reply to his message in a bottle from Hugo. تلقى توم ردًّا على رسالته فى زجاجة من هوجو.
* Hugo lives on the coast in Biarritz, France. يعيش هوجو على الساحل فى بياريتز، فرنسا.
* He was sailing when he saw Tom's message in a bottle. كان يبحر عندما رأى رسالة توم فى زجاجة.
* Hugo's favorite things are his boat, mangoes, and green color. الأشياء المفضلة لدى هوجو هى قاربه والمانجو واللون الأخضر.
* Tom decides to visit him with his granddad. يقرر توم زيارته مع جده.

2. Look and read: انظر واقرأ:

Many years passed, and Tom grew up. He and his grandparents forgot about the message in a bottle. Then, one day, Tom was working when Granddad sent him a message.

مرت سنوات عديدة وكبر توم. نسي هو وأجداده الرسالة الموجودة في الزجاجة. وفي أحد الأيام، كان توم يعمل عندما أرسل له جده رسالة:

Tom, you won't believe it! We have a reply to our message in a bottle!

توم، لن تصدق ذلك! تلقينا ردًا على رسالتك في زجاجة!

That weekend, Tom went to his grandparents' house.

في نهاية هذا الأسبوع، ذهب توم إلى منزل أجداده.

"A man in France found the message," said Granddad. "Look, here is his reply."

«عثر رجل في فرنسا على الرسالة». «انظر، هنا هو رده».

New message

From Hugo
To Tom

Hello Tom,
My name is Hugo and I live in Biarritz, France. I live on the coast and I love sailing my boat. Last week, I was sailing when I saw something in the water—your message in a bottle! This means it traveled over 6,000 kilometers.
I enjoyed reading about your favorite things. My favorite things are my boat, mangoes, and the color green.
You are very welcome to come and visit me in France one day!
With best wishes,

Hugo

مرحبًا توم،
اسمي هوجو وأعيش في بياريتز، فرنسا. أعيش على الساحل وأحب الإبحار بقاربي. في الأسبوع الماضي، كنت أبحر عندما رأيت شيئًا ما في الماء - رسالتك في زجاجة! وهذا يعني أنها سافرت أكثر من 6000 كيلومتر. لقد استمتعت بالقراءة عن الأشياء المفضلة لديك. أشيائي المفضلة هي قاربي والمانجو واللون الأخضر.
مرحبًا بك جدًا للحضور لزيارتي في فرنسا يومًا ما!
مع أطيب التمنيات،
هوجو

Tom was very excited. "Wow, our message traveled a really long way!"
Later that evening, Tom was writing something when Granddad came into the room.
"What are you doing, Tom?"
"I'm writing to Hugo."
"Why, are you going to visit him?"
"You and I are both going to visit him!"
"That's a great idea;" laughed Granddad. "But it's a long way, so let's go by plane!"

كان توم متحمسًا جدًا. «رائع، لقد قطعت رسالتنا مسافة طويلة حقًا!»
في وقت لاحق من ذلك المساء، كان توم يكتب شيئًا ما عندما دخل جده إلى الغرفة.
«ماذا تفعل يا توم؟»
«أنا أكتب إلى هوجو.»
«لماذا، هل ستزوره؟»
«أنا وأنت سنزوره!»
«هذه فكرة عظيمة،» ضحك الجد. «ولكن الطريق طويل، لذلك هيا نذهب بالطائرة!»

Tip! A good ending tells you what happens to the characters and how they feel at the end of the story.

النهاية الجيدة تخبرك بما يحدث للشخصيات وما يشعرون به في نهاية القصة.

Practice

Lessons 4 & 5

• Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 The _____ tells you what happens at the end of the story.
a) beginning b) ending c) character d) moral

2 I need to send a _____ to Ahmed's message.
a) present b) book c) bottle d) reply

3 The team was really _____ when they won the match.
a) angry b) worried c) excited d) loud

4 We went on a _____ trip on water.
a) boat b) plane c) bus d) bike

5 You are very _____ to come to my birthday party.
a) long b) far c) welcome d) funny

6 _____ a boat is one of my favorite water activities.
a) Cycling b) Sailing c) Swimming d) Diving

7 Dad took the _____ from the airport to France yesterday.
a) train b) taxi c) metro d) plane

8 My house is on the _____ of the sea.
a) boat b) street c) coast d) bottle

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

reply – Granddad – boat – message

Many years passed, and Tom grew up. One day, Tom was working when(1)..... sent him a message telling him that they had a(2)..... to the message in a bottle. A man in France found the(3)..... and sent a reply. Tom was really excited and decided to write to the man to visit him.

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

Hello Ali,
My name is Jane, and I live in London, England. I live on the coast and I love sailing my boat. Last week, I was sailing when I saw something in the water — your message in a bottle! This means it traveled over 6,000 kilometers. I enjoyed reading about your favorite things. My favorite things are my boat, mangoes, and the color green.
You are very welcome to come and visit me in England one day! I'm really excited to meet you.
With best wishes,
Jane

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 Jane lives on the

a) road b) coast c) beach d) ship

2 is sending a message to Ali.

a) Jane b) Dad c) Granddad d) Grandparents

B Answer the following questions:

3 What did Jane find in the water?

4 Where is Jane from?

5 How far did the message in a bottle travel?

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1 activities – swimming – My favorite – are – and – sailing.

.....

2 about – Tom – the message – a bottle – in – forgot.

.....

3 does – Tom – What – do – decide to?

.....

4 in – A man – message – the – France – found.

.....

5 Punctuate the following:

What are you doing, tom

.....

6 Write an email of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements:

مجاب عنه صفحة 285

Write an email to your granddad to tell him about your favorite things. Your name is Essam and your email address is essam@school.com. Your granddad's email address is granddad@home.com.

From :

To :

Subject :

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

إدارة متفلوط - أسيوط 2024

Unit 9 REVIEW



يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من مراجعة أهم الأجزاء التى وردت بالوحدة.

Lesson (1)

setting	الوقت والمكان للقصة	ending	النهاية (الخاتمة)
characters	شخصيات	narrator	الراوى
moral	المغزى (الدرس الأخلاقى)	countryside	الريف
story	قصة	son	ابن
review	مراجعة	popular	مشهور
funny	مضحك	market	سوق
details	تفاصيل	journey	رحلة
lesson	درس	differences	اختلافات
tired	متعب	clever	ذكى

Lesson (2)

message	رسالة	bottle	زجاجة (عبوة)
beginning	بداية	trash	قمامة
paper	ورقة	event	حدث
beach	شاطئ	granddad	جد
text message	رسالة نصية	scared	خائف
forest	غابة	sand	رمل
surf	يركب الأمواج	idea	فكرة

Lesson (3)

sheep	خروف/ خرفان	shepherd	الراعى (راعى الماشية)
villager	قروى	wolf	ذئب
hill	تل	grass	عشب
lonely	وحيد	bored	يشعر بالملل
tools	أدوات	joke	مزحة
real	حقيقى	untrue	غير حقيقى
whale	حوت	whisper	يهمس
west	غرب	truth	الحقيقة

Lessons (4 & 5)

reply	رد/ يرد	coast	ساحل
sailing	الإبحار	boat	قارب
excited	متشوق/ متحمس	France	فرنسا
Biarritz	بيارتز (مدينة فى فرنسا)	mangoes	مانجو
plane	طائرة	both	كلانا
travel	يسافر	make sure	يتأكد

Language Focus

Past Continuous Tense

1. Affirmative Form: صيغة الإثبات

I/ He/ She/ It	was	(inf. مصدر الفعل + ing)
You/ We/ They	were	

e.g. John was walking his dog yesterday at noon.

2. Negative Form: صيغة النفي

I/ He/ She/ It	wasn't	(inf. مصدر الفعل + ing)
You/ We/ They	weren't	

e.g. They weren't sleeping at 8.00 yesterday.

3. Yes/No Question: السؤال بـ(هل)

Question: السؤال

Was	I/ he/ she/ it	(inf. مصدر الفعل + ing) ... ?
Were	you/ we/ they	

Answer: الإجابة

Yes,	subject (الفاعل)	was/were.
No,		wasn't/weren't.

e.g. A: Was she writing a book? B: Yes, she was. or No, she wasn't.

4. Wh- question: السؤال باستخدام أدوات الاستفهام

Wh-word كلمة الاستفهام	was / were	subject (الفاعل)	(inf. مصدر الفعل + ing) ?

e.g. A: What were you doing at 6.00 yesterday?
B: I was studying.

"When"

Past continuous الماضى المستمر ← when → Past simple الماضى البسيط

e.g. The children were playing in the park when mom called them out.

When → Past simple الماضى البسيط → Past continuous الماضى المستمر

e.g. When my dad came home, I was reading a book.

Unit 9 CHECK YOUR VOCABULARY



تأكد من حفظك لكلمات الدروس قبل البدء فى إجابة اختبار الوحدة.

Lesson 1

قصة		ابن	
مراجعة		شخصيات	
الريف		الوقت والمكان للقصة	
المغزى (الدرس الأخلاقى)		الراوى	
النهاية (الخاتمة)		تفاصيل	
مشهور		دولة	
درس		متعب	

Lesson 2

بداية		زجاجة (عبوة)	
حدث		رسالة	
قمامة		ورقة	
هادئ		شاطئ	
الفضاء		فكرة	
ممر		رسالة نصية	
خائف		غابة	
يركب الأمواج		عنوان البريد الإلكترونى	

Lesson 3

خروف / خرفان		الراعى (راعى الماشية)	
قروى		ذئب	
عشب		تل	
حقل		وحيد	
مزحة		أدوات	
بمفرده		حقيقى	
يهمس		حوت	

Lessons 4 & 5

يسافر		رد	
ساحل		الإبحار	
قارب		متشوق/ متحمس	
رائع		كلٌّ من	
طائرة		فرنسا	

WRITING TIME



تجميعة لأهم موضوعات الوحدة

لكى تتمكن من كتابة الموضوعات بشكل مميز، اتبع هذه الخطوات.

How to write about a story review:

- I'm writing a review about a story called + (اسم القصة).
- The characters are + (أسماء الشخصيات).
- The setting is + (مكان وزمان الأحداث).
- The story is about + (أحداث القصة).
- The moral of the story is + (الدرس المتعلم من القصة).

"A story review"

I'm writing a review about a story called "Goha and the Donkey." The main characters are Goha, his son, and the donkey. The setting is the countryside, many years ago. The story is about a man and his son, who take turns riding the donkey. But people weren't happy with anyone riding the donkey. In the ending, they both carry the donkey. The moral of the story is that we can't make everyone happy.

How to write a story:

Answer the following questions:

- Where were you?
- Who were you with?
- What time of the day was the story?
- What was the weather like?
- What were you doing?
- What did you find?

"A day at the beach"

My brother Ali and I were on the beach near our grandparents' house. It was early in the morning. The weather was lovely, and the sun was shining. We were swimming in the sea when suddenly we found a glass bottle in the water. There was a piece of paper in the bottle. We took the bottle to our grandparents to open it.

How to write a story using sequencing adverbs:

- First, + (الحدث الأول).
- Next, + (الحدث الثانى).
- Then, + (الحدث الذى يليه).
- After that, + (الحدث الذى يليه).
- Finally, + (الحدث الأخير).

"The boy who cried Wolf"

Peter was lonely and bored. He wanted to have some fun. He had an idea. First, he shouted "Wolf!" and the villagers came to help and save the sheep. Next, he said there was no wolf, and it was a joke. Then, Peter did it again. After that, the villagers were very angry and said he shouldn't waste their time. Finally, a real wolf came. It ate the sheep. Peter was very sorry.

Unit 9 STUDENT'S BOOK CORNER

يتضمن هذا الجزء أهم الأسئلة التى وردت بكتاب الوزارة.

1 Complete the sentences with the words from the box:

character – ending – moral – narrator – setting

1 The of the story is kindness is everything.

2 The main was a bit boring – I didn't like him.

3 The is the person who tells you the story.

4 In the, we find out why he was sad.

5 The is London in 1965.

2 Complete the sentences with the past continuous or past simple form of the verbs in brackets:

1 Fatima(do) her homework when she(get) a text message from her friend.

2 Ghada and I(play) computer games when her brother.....(arrive) home.

3 I(not watch) TV when you(call) me.

4 you (look) at your phone when I(see)you in the street?

3 Write sentences using the words, the past continuous, and the past simple:

1 he/ play/ piano / when/ his mom/ arrive home.

.....

2 we/ travel/ to the city/ when/ Grandma/ call us.

.....

3 they/ listen/ to music/ when/ the man/ shout.

.....

4 you/ study for your exam/ when/ the car/ stop/ outside.

.....

Test Yourself 30

UNIT 9

Listening

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: 4

(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

1 My favorite story is "Goha and the"
a) Horse b) Goat c) Donkey d) Camel

2 The characters are Goha, his, and the donkey.
a) friend b) son c) daughter d) wife

3 It took place in the
a) desert b) sea c) forest d) countryside

4 People aren't with anyone riding the donkey.
a) happy b) excited c) sad d) right

Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: 1.5

1 Goha is the main of the story.
a) character b) ending c) moral d) setting

2 The is the person who tells the story.
a) narrator b) setting c) review d) countryside

3 She wants to send a to her friend's message.
a) present b) book c) mail d) reply

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: 1.5

forest – path – sun – moon

My friend Ali and I were playing in the(1)..... yesterday. It was a lovely afternoon and the(2)..... was shining. We were near my home, and we were hoping to see some interesting animals and birds. We were walking along the(3)..... when we saw a little dog. It was hungry and sick. We decided to help it and take it home.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: 7

One day, Tom was swimming in the sea when he saw a glass bottle in the water. He thought it was trash and wanted to throw it in the bin. But Granddad told him it was a message in a bottle. Granddad started to teach Tom how to write a message in a bottle. First, he writes a message on a piece of paper. Next, he folds the paper and puts it in the bottle. After that, he throws the bottle out to sea for someone else to find. Tom was happy and decided to write one.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 The general idea of the text is about

a) Tom b) Granddad

c) the sea d) the message in a bottle

2 The underlined word "one" refers to the

a) bottle b) message c) paper d) trash

B Answer the following questions:

3 What was Tom doing when he saw the glass bottle?

4 How can you write a message in a bottle?

5 Where did Granddad throw the bottle?

Writing

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences: (1)

1 person – funny – and – is – a clever – Goha.

الدقهلية - إدارة طلخا 2024

.....

2 Jawha – in – Goha – known – Sudan – as – is.

.....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets: (4)

1 Were you (bake) cookies when you broke the pan?

البحيرة - إدارة المنزلة 2024

2 What (was) you doing yesterday afternoon?

7 Punctuate the following: (4)

1 youssef's dad is sending the message

2 Why is goha a great narrator

8 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements: (7)

"A message in a bottle"



What is a message in a bottle? – How do you write it?

.....

.....

.....

.....



Assess your progress ★ ★ ★ ★ ★

< 50%	50 : 64%	65 : 84%	85 : 100%
Study again	Practice more	Solve more exams	Well done!

Unit 9 AL-AZHAR CORNER



تحتوى هذه الصفحة على أسئلة خاصة بمواصفات الأزهر.

1 Read and complete the dialogue:

son – countryside – review – setting – characters

Mom : What are you doing, Lama?

Lama : I'm writing a of the story "Goha and his Donkey."

Mom : What is the of the story?

Lama : It takes place in the

Mom : Who are the?

Lama : They are Goha, his, and the donkey.

2 Read and circle the odd one out:

1 market	countryside	village	walk	
2 Sudan	Morocco	journey	Algeria	
3 When	were	Where	What	
4 setting	character	moral	funny	
5 bottle	find	travel	write	

3 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

1 son – the market – Goha – his – to – and – went.

.....

2 known – Goha – as – in – Jeha – is – Algeria.

.....

3 can't – everyone – make – You – happy.

.....

4 quiet – beautiful – was – and – The beach.

.....

5 things – What – favorite – your – are?

.....

MARCH REVISION

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 Ancient Egyptians built the Pyramids with
a) granite b) plastic c) grain d) metal
بنى سويف - إدارة الواسطى التعليمية 2024

2 The hot, dry in Egypt helps to preserve the artifacts.
a) museum b) glass c) climate d) material
بنى سويف - إدارة إهناسيا التعليمية 2024

3 A person who tells a story is a
القاهرة - إدارة السلام التعليمية 2024
a) baker b) vet c) narrator d) boy

4 are very dangerous birds. Ancient Egyptians loved them.
الدقهلية - إدارة نبروه التعليمية 2024
a) Baboons b) Falcons c) Monkeys d) Bears

5 Spiderman is my favorite
بنى سويف - إدارة الواسطى التعليمية 2024
a) food b) action figure c) place d) color

6 A is a large table that you use to sell things at a market.
أسيوط - إدارة ديروط التعليمية 2024
a) school b) hospital c) park d) stall

7 There is a message in a
القاهرة - إدارة السلام التعليمية 2024
a) cattle b) little c) bottle d) candle

8 A: What's your favorite? B: It's hopscotch.
الدقهلية - إدارة نبروه التعليمية 2024
a) meteorite b) city c) paint d) game

9 I love the games where I can build different things with
a) chalk b) bricks c) toys d) consoles

10 Would you press the to start the machine?
a) button b) trunk c) game d) sail

11 The is the strong piece of cloth that makes the boat move.
a) trunk b) sail c) snail d) stall

12 Let's draw some squares to play
a) skipping b) hopscotch c) hide and seek d) football

13 The train is Hana's favorite game.
a) house b) doll c) set d) figure

14 The lesson you learn from the story is the
بورسعيد - إدارة شمال التعليمية 2024
a) ending b) moral c) narrator d) setting

15 is buying and selling things between countries.
a) Metal b) Weapon c) Trade d) Economy

16 Ancient Egyptians used the to make flour and bread.
a) metal b) grain c) granite d) mud

17 A/An is a person who looks after sheep.
الجيزة - إدارة الوراق التعليمية 2024
a) dentist b) engineer c) shepherd d) teacher

18 Ancient Egyptians used for hunting animals.

a) weapons b) tools c) rocks d) materials

19 The action figure is Omar's favorite

a) color b) toy c) game d) story

20 People who live in a village are called

a) shepherds b) villagers c) characters d) hills

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

need – fall off – park – stickers

محافظة أسيوط - إدارة البدارى التعليمية 2024

When I was young, my favorite toy was my skateboard. I loved going to the(1)..... and playing with my friends. They had skateboards, too, and it was really good fun. My skateboard was black, with orange and yellow(2)..... on it. I had to wear a helmet and knee pads. It really hurts if you(3)..... a skateboard.

preserve – climate – durable – sink

محافظة بنى سويف - إدارة إهناسيا التعليمية 2024

I went to the Museum of Ancient History last week. I met some students who are at Egyptian Eagles Primary School. I learned about Ancient Egyptian artifacts. The(1)..... is hot and dry in Egypt, that's why many artifacts aren't damaged by cold and wet weather. This helps to(2)..... the artifacts. I knew that the Ancient Egyptians built the Pyramids with granite, a very hard and(3)..... stone.

played – message – glass – artifact

Tom's grandparents lived by the sea. The beach near their house was quiet and beautiful, and Tom loved to go there with them.They swam, surfed, and(1)..... games on the sand. One day, they were swimming in the sea when Tom saw a(2)..... bottle in the water. Tom wanted to throw it in the trash. But Granddad had a better idea. He wanted to write a(3)..... in a bottle.

trade – weapons – jewelry – copper

The Ancient Egyptians started using iron more than 5,000 years ago. Before iron, they worked with(1)..... and bronze. Some of their early iron was from meteorites. They thought iron was special because they believed it came from the sky. Early on, the Ancient Egyptians used iron for small items, like(2)..... . But later on, iron agricultural tools and(3)..... began to appear.

3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1 he – reading – Does – enjoy – books? أسيوط - إدارة البدارى التعليمية 2024

2 at – wasn't – I – good – very – skipping. أسيوط - إدارة البدارى التعليمية 2024

3 do – play – hide – When – seek – you – and? بنى سويف - إدارة إهناسيا التعليمية 2024

4 tree – The bird – under – the – is. أسيوط - إدارة الغنايم التعليمية 2024

5 your – vacation – Where – was – last summer? أسيوط - إدارة الغنايم التعليمية 2024

6 doesn't – Hamza – like – at all – playing – chess.

7 known – Goha – as – in – Jha – is – Morocco. الجيزة - إدارة الوراق التعليمية 2024

8 did – When – you – home – yesterday – come?

9 sleeping – I was – when – mom – arrived.

10 funny – are – Goha's – stories. القاهرة - إدارة المرج التعليمية 2024

4 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) in the brackets:

1 Did Ancient Egyptians (kept) animals as pets? محافظة أسيوط - إدارة منفلوط التعليمية 2024

2 I (travel) to Paris last year. محافظة بنى سويف - إدارة الواسطى التعليمية 2024

3 My friend isn't good at computer games (quite). محافظة أسيوط - إدارة الغنايم التعليمية 2024

4 People stopped (write) letters a long time ago. محافظة الدقهلية - إدارة نبروه التعليمية 2024

5 My dad was (sleep) yesterday evening. محافظة القاهرة - إدارة المرج التعليمية 2024

6 The cat is (in front) to the door.

7 He was (study) English at 8 pm yesterday. محافظة الجيزة - إدارة شمال الجيزة التعليمية 2024

8 I was (walk) home when I saw Ali. محافظة أسيوط - إدارة منفلوط التعليمية 2024

9 They (was) watching TV yesterday evening. محافظة الشرقية - إدارة صان الحجر التعليمية 2024

10 I was walking home when I (meet) Soha.

11 They were (at all) good at playing hide and seek.

12 When (do) she last visit her grandparents?

13 (Do) the children arrive early yesterday?

14 Children enjoy (play) in the park together. محافظة الشرقية - إدارة الصالحية الجديدة التعليمية 2024

15 They (doesn't) use plastic in the past. محافظة الشرقية - إدارة منيا القمح التعليمية 2024

16 He didn't (went) to school. محافظة دمياط - إدارة الروضة التعليمية 2024

17 I don't like (play) with train sets. محافظة الجيزة - إدارة بولاق الدكرور التعليمية 2024

18 My house is (next) of the school. محافظة الفيوم 2024

19 They didn't enjoy playing skipping (really). محافظة الفيوم 2024

20 (Does) he have a nice time yesterday? محافظة الفيوم 2024

Unit 10

Free as a bird

حر كالطير



Unit Objectives

- By the end of this unit, the student will be able to:

- listen, read, research, and write about bird and animal proverbs.
- listen to and understand a presentation about eco-tourism in Egypt.
- read and learn about eco-tourism and wildlife.
- use "must/mustn't" to talk about something we have to do.
- use the first conditional to talk about things that are likely to happen in the future.
- read advertisements for eco-tourism vacations in Egypt.
- read and learn about bird migration.
- say words with two or three syllables.
- read and write a blog about animal habitats.
- create an information leaflet about the Nile Delta.

- بنهاية هذه الوحدة، سيكون التلميذ قادرًا على أن:

- يستمع، يقرأ، يبحث، ويكتب عن الأمثال الخاصة بالطيور والحيوانات.
- يستمع وينهم عرضًا تقديميًا عن السياحة البيئية فى مصر.
- يقرأ و يتعلم عن السياحة البيئية والحياة البرية.
- يستخدم «يجب أن/ لا يجب أن» لتحدث عن شيء يجب علينا فعله.
- يستخدم الحالة الشرطية الأولى للتعبير عن أشياء محتمل حدوثها فى المستقبل.
- يقرأ إعلانات إجازات السياحة البيئية فى مصر.
- يقرأ ويتعلم عن هجرة الطيور.
- يقول كلمات من مقطعين أو ثلاثة مقاطع.
- يقرأ ويكتب مدونة عن بيئات الحيوانات.
- يصمم نشرة معلوماتية عن دلتا النيل.

Did you know?

- The biggest bird in the world is the *ostrich. It can be 210 cm long. It can run fast, but it can't fly! The smallest bird is the *bee hummingbird. It's about 5.5 cm long.

Find out!

- * The steppe eagle is the *national bird of Egypt, and it is the *symbol included on the Egyptian flag. They are very proud birds. Steppe eagles do not eat *dead prey but only fresh kills.

*ostrich	نعامة	* bee hummingbird	النحل الطنان	*steppe eagle	نسر السهوب
*national	قومى/ وطنى	* symbol	رمز	* dead prey	فريسة ميتة



Lesson 1

Birds of A Feather

الطيور ذوات الريش (متشابهين)

Watch a video

1. Listen and say: استمع وقل:

Main vocabulary

proverbs	أمثال	successful (adj.)	ناجح	similar (adj.)	متشابه
careful (adj.)	مهتم / حريص	real (adj.)	حقيقي	sensible (adj.)	منطقي / عقلاني

Extra vocabulary

feathers	ريش	description	وصف	early (adj.)	مبكر
worm	دودة	well-known (adj.)	مشهور	phrase	عبارة / شبه جملة
true (adj.)	حقيقي	scientific (adj.)	علمي	fact	حقيقة
exactly	بالضبط	strange (adj.)	غريب	nest	عش
plans	خطط	scary (adj.)	مخيف	eagle	نسر

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعـــال منتظمـة

Present		Past	Present		Past
suggest	يقترح	suggested	flock	يتجمع / يحتشد	flocked
mention	يذكر	mentioned	count	يعد	counted
hatch	يفقس	hatched	dare	يجرؤ/ لا يخاف	dared
succeed	ينجح	succeeded	compare	يقارن	compared

Irregular verbs أفعـــال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
catch	يمسك	caught	mean	يعني	meant
become	يصبح	became	fall	يسقط	fell
learn	يتعلم	learnt	fly	يطير	flew
understand	يفهم	understood	build	يبني	built

Expressions and Phrases

generally true	صحيح عمومًا	as well as	بالإضافة إلى
more than	أكثر من	How about ...?	ماذا عن ...؟
flock together	يتجمعون سويًا	look the same	متشابهون
make plans	يضع خططًا	seem scary	تبدو مخيفة
well done	أحسنت	get the idea	يفهم الفكرة
make mistakes	يرتكب أخطاء	higher than	أكثر ارتفاعًا من

Definitions

proverb	A proverb is a well-known phrase about something which is generally true. المثل هو عبارة مشهورة عن شيء ما صحيح بشكل عام. A proverb has another meaning as well as its exact meaning. المثل له معنى آخر بالإضافة إلى معناه الدقيق.
successful	Someone who is successful tries to do something, and does it. الشخص الناجح يحاول أن يفعل شيئًا ما، ويفعله.
similar	When two things are similar, they might look the same or do the same things. عندما يكون هناك شيئان متشابهان، فإنهما قد يبدوان بنفس الشكل أو يفعلان نفس الأشياء.
real	If something is real, it happens and it's true. إذا كان شيء ما حقيقي، فإنه يحدث، وهو حقيقة.
sensible	If something is sensible, it's a good idea that someone has thought about carefully. إذا كان هناك شيء ما منطقي أو عقلاني، فإنه فكرة جيدة فكر بها شخص ما بدقة وحرص.
careful	A careful person tries hard not to make mistakes. الشخص الحريص يحاول جاهدًا عدم ارتكاب الأخطاء.

Proverbs

- "The early bird catches the worm."
«البركة في البكور»
وتعني أن الشخص الذي يبدأ مبكرًا بعمل شيء ما يكون الأكثر نجاحًا.

- "Birds of a feather flock together."
« الطيور على أشكالها تقع»
وتعني أن الأشخاص المتشابهين يحبون القيام بنفس الأشياء.

- "Don't count your chickens before they hatch."
«لا تعد الدجاج قبل أن يفقس من البيض»
وتعني ألا تعتمد على شيء لم يحدث بعد. فلا ينبغي للإنسان أن يبالغ في الآمال ويبني القصور في الهواء.

- "The bird who dares to fall is the bird who learns to fly."
«الطائر الذي لا يخاف السقوط هو الطائر الذي يتعلم الطيران»
تعني أن الشخص الذي يتجاوز مخاوفه وتحدياته هو الذي ينجح.

- "Even an eagle will not fly higher than sun."
«حتى النسر لن يطير أعلى من الشمس»
وتعني أن هناك حدودًا لكل شيء حتى الشخص والكائنات القوية لن تستطيع تجاوز تلك الحدود.

- "Singing birds don't build nests."
«الطيور التي تغني لا تبني أعشاشًا»
تعني أن الشخص الذي يتكلم كثيرًا لا يقوم بعمل المهام الأساسية المطلوبة منه.

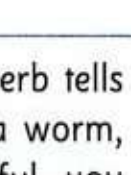
- "It is not only fine feathers which make fine birds."
«الريش الجميل لا يصنع طيورًا جميلة»
وتعني أنه لا يجب أن نحكم على الشخص بناء على الجمال الخارجي، ولكن من خلال ما يمتلك من صفات وقيم جميلة.

Check

Choose the correct answer:

1 It's a beautiful bird, it has long wings with colorful (skin – feathers – fur – hair).
2 He always gets high marks; he is very (sensible – similar – successful – real).
3 My T-shirt and yours look the same, they are very (same – strong – some – similar).
4 It's (exact – sensible – real – careful) to eat your vegetables because they are good for you.
5 Be (true – real – strange – careful) with the glass, it might break.
6 Is that a (real – scientific – known – exact) dog or a toy?

2. Listen, read, and role-play: استمع، اقرأ وتبادل الأدوار:



Malak

Injy, what does this proverb mean? "The early bird catches the worm."

إنجي، ماذا يعني هذا المثل؟ «الطائر المبكر يصطاد الدودة».

Injy



Well, proverbs have more than one meaning. This proverb tells us that a bird that is early, or the first to try to catch a worm, usually catches it. So, it also means that to be successful, you need to be the first to do something.

حسنًا، الأمثال الشعبية لها أكثر من معنى. يخبرنا هذا المثل أن الطائر الذي يكون مبكرًا، أو أول من يحاول اصطياد الدودة، عادة ما يصطادها. لذا، فهذا يعني أيضًا أنه لكي تكون ناجحًا، عليك أن تكون أول من يفعل شيئًا ما.

Malak



How about this one? "Birds of a feather flock together".

ماذا عن هذا؟ «الطيور على أشكالها تقع».

Injy



If they flock together, that means they stay in a large group. And maybe it mentions feathers because they all have similar feathers.

إذا تجمعوا معًا، فهذا يعني أنهم يبقون في مجموعة كبيرة. وربما يذكر الريش لأن جميعها لها ريش متشابه.

Malak



You mean they all look the same?

هل تقصدين أنهم جميعًا يبدون نفس الشيء؟



Injy

Yes. But here, it means that similar people like doing the same things.

نعم. ولكن هنا يعنى أن الأشخاص المتشابهين يحبون القيام بنفس الأشياء.



Malak

Okay, here's a strange one! "Don't count your chickens before they hatch."

حسنًا، هنا مثل آخر غريب! «لا تعد دجاجك قبل أن يفقس».



Injy

Well, you might have four eggs in a nest, but you don't really know how many will become chickens. So maybe it's about being careful before you know something will happen.

حسنًا، قد يكون لديك أربع بيضات فى العش، لكنك لا تعرف حقًا كم بيضة منهم ستصبح دجاجًا. لذلك ربما يتعلق الأمر بأن تكون حذرًا قبل أن تعرف أن شيئًا ما سيحدث.



Malak

So you don't make too many plans before something is real. That's sensible. How about this proverb? "The bird who dares to fall is the bird who learns to fly." Do you think that means you have to try something that seems scary if you want to succeed?

لذلك لا تضع الكثير من الخطط قبل أن يصبح الأمر حقيقيًا. هذا منطقى. ماذا عن هذا المثل؟ «الطائر الذى لا يخاف السقوط هو الطائر الذى يتعلم الطيران.» هل تعتقد أن هذا يعنى أنه عليك تجربة شىء يبدو مخيفًا إذا كنت تريد النجاح؟



Injy

Yes, I do. Well done, Malak! You're getting the idea!

نعم صحيح. أحسنتى يا ملك! لقد فهمتى الفكرة!

Practice

Lesson 1

• Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

1 Salma read a book about
a) birds b) worms c) proverbs d) animals

2 The book was
a) careful b) scientific c) amazing d) true

3 The early bird catches the
a) worm b) food c) ant d) book

4 To be, you need to be the first to do something.
a) real b) true c) sensible d) successful

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 Can you any plans for the next weekend? الدقهلية - إدارة بلقاس 2024
a) do b) take c) bake d) make

2 "Don't count your before they hatch."
a) worms b) birds c) chickens d) feathers

3 A/An "....." is a well-known phrase about something which is generally true.
a) verb b) noun c) adjective d) proverb

4 "Birds of a feather together."
a) sing b) dare c) hatch d) flock

5 When something happens and it's true, this means it's
a) real b) large c) strange d) description

6 people like doing the same things.
a) Similar b) Same c) Different d) Good

7 are homes for birds. أسيوط 2024
a) Tents b) Hospitals c) Schools d) Nests

8 Singing birds don't nests.
a) want b) mention c) fly d) build

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

meaning – true – dares – sings

Proverbs are amazing. A proverb is a well-known phrase about something which is generally(1)..... . Proverbs have more than one(2)..... . For example, this proverb says, "The bird who(3)..... to fall is the bird who learns to fly." It means you have to try something that seems scary if you want to succeed.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

My name is Lama. I'm in grade six. I love reading very much. Yesterday, I read a book about proverbs. It was very interesting. Proverbs usually have another meaning as well as their exact meaning. For example, this proverb, "Birds of a feather flock together," means that similar people like doing the same things. But it mentions feathers to show that they are all similar in something. Another proverb is "Singing birds don't build nests." It means that the person who talks a lot doesn't have time to do his work.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 The general idea of the text is about "……".

a) Proverbs b) Lama's school

c) Lama's family d) Lama's hobbies

2 The underlined verb "flock together" means …… .

a) count b) dare c) hatch d) meet

B Answer the following questions:

3 What grade is Lama in?

……

4 What does Lama love doing very much?

……

5 What does the proverb "Singing birds don't build nests" mean?

……

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1 flock – of – Birds – together – a feather.

……

2 a – stay – group – large – in – They.

……

3 count – before – your – Don't – chickens – hatch – they.

……

4 don't – Singing – birds – nests – build.

……

6 Punctuate the following:

1 What does this proverb mean, hana

……

2 the early bird catches the worm

……

الدقهلية - إدارة شربين 2024



Lesson 2

Watch a video

A Eco-tourism in Egypt السياحة البيئية فى مصر

1. Listen, point, and say: استمع، أشر، وقل:

Main vocabulary



bird-watching
مشاهدة الطيور



sailing on the Nile
الإبحار فى النيل



going on safari
الذهاب فى رحلة سفارى



hiking
التنزه



snorkeling
الغطس



taking photos
التقاط الصور

eco-tourism	السياحة البيئية	sustainable (adj.)	مستمر/ دائم	simple (adj.)	بسيط
accommodation	مكان المبيت	ideal (adj.)	مثالى	habitat	موطن / بيئة طبيعية

Extra vocabulary

guide book	دليل	tourists	سياح	historical (adj.)	تاريخى
store	متجر	popular (adj.)	مشهور	environment	البيئة
traditional (adj.)	تقليدى	nature	الطبيعة	distance	مسافة
journeys	رحلات	North Africa	شمال إفريقيا	Asia	قارة آسيا
Europe	قارة أوروبا	species	أنواع/ فصائل	Siwa Oasis	واحة سيوة
water birds	طيور مائية	perfect / excellent (adj.)	ممتاز	tour	جولة سياحية
tent	خيمة	lizard	سحلية	chance	فرصة
underwater photography	التصوير تحت الماء	vacation	إجازة	coral reefs	الشعاب المرجانية
protected area	منطقة محمية	trips	رحلات		

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعـــال منتظمـة

Present		Past	Present		Past
snorkel	يغطس	snorkeled	sail	يبحر	sailed
damage	يدمر	damaged	cause	يسبب	caused
migrate	يهاجر	migrated	respect	يحترم	respected
camp	يخيم/ يعسكر	camped	scare	يخيف	scared

Irregular verbs أفعـــال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
find	يجد	found	hurt	يجرح/ يؤذى	hurt
bring	يحضر	brought	go down	تغرب (الشمس)	went down

Expressions and Phrases

go on a desert safari	يقوم برحلة سفارى صحراوية	(be) designed to	مصممة لـ ...
make nests	يبنى العشوش	go over Egypt	يمر على مصر
get too close to	يقترب جدًا من	look after	يعتنى بـ
desert sunsets	غروب الشمس فى الصحراء	go / set off on a tour	ينطلق فى رحلة
bright-colored fish	الأسماك ذات الألوان الزاهية	travel along the river	يسافر بطول النهر

Definitions

respect	like something and want to look after it	أن تحب شيئًا ما وتريد الاعتناء به
sustainable	do something in a way that doesn't damage the environment	أن تفعل شيئًا ما بطريقة لا تضر البيئة
simple	living in a place where you have what you need, and nothing more	أن تعيش فى مكان به ما تحتاج إليه، لا شىء أكثر
accommodation	This is somewhere you stay.	المكان الذى تقيم فيه
ideal	perfect or excellent	رائع أو ممتاز

Take care!

journey: رحلة طويلة — e.g. The birds often must fly very long distances, and lots of their journeys go over Egypt.

trip: رحلة قصيرة — e.g. This is a protected area, so there mustn't be too many trips.

tour: جولة (زيارة عدة أماكن خلال نفس الرحلة) — e.g. We're going on a tour to see the birds and animals which live near the water.

- لاحظ أن بعض الأنشطة يأتى معها الفعل (go) بمعنى (يقوم بالنشاط ويمارسه):

e.g. go snorkeling – go bird watching

e.g. go on desert safari – go on a tour

- التعبير (go on) قد يأتى بمعنى أن يشارك فى بعض الأنشطة أو المهمة.

2. Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:



Egypt is an amazing country. There are many historical places to visit, as well as stores, markets, and museums. People can go snorkeling in the Red Sea, go on a desert safari, climb mountains, or sail on the Nile. So, tourism is important – but eco-tourism is becoming very popular, too.

مصر بلد رائع. هناك العديد من الأماكن التاريخية التى يمكنك زيارتها، بالإضافة إلى المتاجر والأسواق والمتاحف. يمكن للناس ممارسة الغطس فى البحر الأحمر، أو الذهاب فى رحلة سفارى صحراوية، أو تسلق الجبال، أو الإبحار فى نهر النيل. لذا، فإن السياحة مهمة - ولكن السياحة البيئية أصبحت مشهورة جدًا أيضًا.

Eco-tourism is a way of traveling that doesn't damage the environment. It's more sustainable than traditional tourism, and it is designed to protect nature. People stay in simple accommodation, not large hotels, and they mustn't travel in ways that cause lots of pollution.

السياحة البيئية هى وسيلة سفر لا تضر بالبيئة. إنها أكثر استدامة من السياحة التقليدية، وهى مصممة لحماية الطبيعة. يقيم الناس فى أماكن مبيت (غرف) بسيطة، وليس فى فنادق كبيرة، ويجب ألا يسافروا بطرق تسبب الكثير من التلوث.

Many people are starting to visit Egypt for bird and wildlife watching. There are lots of interesting birds to see here. Many kinds of birds migrate – they must fly to different countries at certain times of year, to find food, make nests, or have warmer weather. The birds often must fly very long distances, and lots of their journeys go over Egypt, because it is in North Africa and close to Asia and Europe.

بدأ الكثير من الناس زيارة مصر لمشاهدة الطيور والحياة البرية. هناك الكثير من الطيور المثيرة للاهتمام التى يمكنك رؤيتها هنا. تهاجر أنواع كثيرة من الطيور - يجب أن تطير إلى بلدان مختلفة فى أوقات معينة من السنة، للعثور على الطعام، أو بناء أعشاش، أو الاستمتاع بطقس أكثر دفئًا. فى كثير من الأحيان يجب أن تطير الطيور لمسافات طويلة جدًا، وكثير من رحلاتها تمر فوق مصر، لأنها تقع فى شمال إفريقيا وقريبة من آسيا وأوروبا.

There are over 450 species of birds in Egypt, and people come from all over the world on vacations to see them. For example, Siwa Oasis is a fantastic place to see many migrating water birds. It is an important habitat and people must protect it.

يوجد فى مصر أكثر من 450 نوعًا من الطيور، ويأتى الناس من جميع أنحاء العالم فى الإجازات لرؤيتها. على سبيل المثال، تعد واحة سيوة مكانًا رائعًا لمشاهدة العديد من الطيور المائية المهاجرة. إنه بيئة طبيعية مهمة ويجب على الناس حمايته.

People who go bird watching in Egypt will have a lot to see. They mustn't get too close to the birds, because they might fly away, but they can watch from a safe distance and take lots of photographs.

سيكون لدى الأشخاص الذين يقومون بمشاهدة الطيور فى مصر الكثير مما يمكنهم رؤيته. يجب ألا يقتربوا كثيرًا من الطيور، لأنها قد تطير بعيدًا، لكن يمكنهم المشاهدة من مسافة آمنة والتقاط الكثير من الصور.

Wildlife watching is ideal for people who respect nature, and eco-tourism is a good way for people to do this.

تعتبر مشاهدة الحياة البرية مثالية للأشخاص الذين يحترمون الطبيعة، وتعد السياحة البيئية وسيلة جيدة للأشخاص للقيام بذلك.

Vacations in Egypt إجازات فى مصر

3. Look and read: انظر واقرأ:

On the river على النهر



Hi, I'm Nadia. Next month, we're going on a tour to see the birds and animals which live near the water. We'll travel along the river in small boats, and camp in tents at night. We'll bring our cameras, because we'll see some amazing things. We hope to see lizards and turtles, as well as lots of interesting plants. However, we mustn't swim because there might be crocodiles!

مرحبًا، أنا نادية. فى الشهر القادم، سنقوم بجولة لرؤية الطيور والحيوانات التى تعيش بالقرب من الماء. سنسافر على امتداد النهر فى قوارب صغيرة ونخيم فى الخيام ليلًا. سنحضر كاميراتنا، لأننا سنرى بعض الأشياء المذهلة. نأمل أن نرى السحالى والسلاحف، بالإضافة إلى الكثير من النباتات المثيرة للاهتمام. ومع ذلك، يجب ألا نسبح لأنه قد يكون هناك تماسيح!

Desert sunsets غروب الشمس فى الصحراء



Hi, I'm Adam. I love visiting this place with my family. We went last year, and in the evenings, we saw lots of wildlife when the sun went down – more animals live on the sand than you might think. This year we'll stay outside and cook meals under the stars, so we must bring a tent. Then we'll walk in small groups to see the wildlife around us.

مرحبًا، أنا آدم. أحب زيارة هذا المكان مع عائلتى. لقد ذهبنا العام الماضى، وفى المساء، شاهدنا الكثير من الحياة البرية عندما غربت الشمس – يعيش عدد كبير من الحيوانات على الرمال أكثر مما قد تعتقد. هذا العام سنبقى فى الخارج ونُعِد وجبات الطعام تحت النجوم، لذلك يجب علينا إحضار خيمة. ثم سنسير فى مجموعات صغيرة لرؤية الحياة البرية من حولنا.

Snorkel safari رحلات السفارى بالغطس



Hi, I'm Lara. We're going to have the chance to do some underwater photography on our vacation! We'll set off on a tour from the beach in small boats, and sail out to places where we can see many different kinds of fish. There are beautiful, bright-colored fish there, as well as coral reefs. The tour is only on Monday and Wednesday because this is a protected area, so there mustn't be too many trips.

مرحبًا، أنا لارا. ستتاح لنا الفرصة لالتقاط بعض الصور تحت الماء فى إجازتنا! سننطلق فى جولة من الشاطئ بقوارب صغيرة، ونبحر إلى أماكن حيث يمكننا رؤية العديد من أنواع الأسماك المختلفة. وتوجد هناك أسماك جميلة ذات ألوان زاهية، بالإضافة إلى الشعاب المرجانية. الجولة هى فقط يوما الإثنين والأربعاء لأن هذه منطقة محمية، لذلك يجب ألا يكون هناك الكثير من الرحلات.

Birds at the sea طيور فى البحر



Hi, I'm Fares. Next week, we're going on a tour to see some beautiful birds. We'll visit quiet beaches on a small bus, to see how many different kinds we can see. The sea in this area is a very popular place for birds to find food, so it will be a busy day. We're definitely going to bring our cameras! We must bring our own lunches too, as there are no shops there.

مرحباً، أنا فارس. فى الأسبوع القادم، سنقوم بجولة لرؤية بعض الطيور الجميلة. سنقوم بزيارة الشواطئ الهادئة على متن حافلة صغيرة، لنرى عدد الأنواع المختلفة التى يمكننا رؤيتها. يعد البحر فى هذه المنطقة مكانًا مشهورًا جدًا للطيور للعثور على الطعام، لذلك سيكون يومًا حافلًا. نحن بالتأكيد سنحضر كاميراتنا! يجب علينا إحضار وجبات الغداء الخاصة بنا أيضًا، حيث لا توجد متاجر هناك.

Check

Choose the correct answer:

1 Eco-tourism is a way of (planting – learning – traveling – playing) that doesn't damage the environment.

2 (Respect – Simple – Ideal – Migrate) means to like something and want to look after it.

3 You mustn't get too close to birds, they might (go down – fly away – migrate – damage).

4 People who go bird (watching – snorkeling – cooking – traveling) in Egypt will have a lot to see.

5 Eco-tourism is designed to (damage – hurt – protect – take) nature.

B Language Focus

must / mustn't

We use "must" when we talk about something that we have to do or that is important to do.
نستخدم "must" عند التحدث عن شيء يجب علينا فعله أو مهم فعله.

Subject (الفاعل) + must + (inf.) الفعل فى المصدر

e.g. We must bring a tent.

We use "mustn't (must not)" when we are not allowed to do something.
نستخدم "mustn't (must not)" عندما يكون غير مسموح لنا بفعل شيء ما.

Subject (الفاعل) + mustn't + (inf.) الفعل فى المصدر

e.g. We mustn't swim here because there might be crocodiles!

Check

Choose the correct answer:

1 We (mustn't – can't – must – aren't) be careful in the natural environment. SB
2 Omar (must – is – mustn't – can) speak loudly in the library.
3 You must (finish – finishing – finishes – finished) your homework before going to sleep.
4 We (must – should – mustn't – doesn't) take pets to school!
5 You (mustn't – doesn't – must – isn't) shout at your sister.
6 The train leaves at 7 am. We must (arriving – arrive – arrived – arrives) on time.
7 My father drives a car to work; he (can't – mustn't – isn't – must) wear a seatbelt.
8 Salma (mustn't – isn't – don't – must) eat too many sweets. It's unhealthy.
9 Adel (must – can't – mustn't – shouldn't) speak quietly in the library.
10 You can take photos, but you (must – can – should – mustn't) hurt animals.

Practice

Lesson 2

• Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 People can go in the Red Sea.
a) snorkeling b) cooking c) shopping d) watching

2 "....." means perfect or excellent. SB
a) Simple b) Beautiful c) Ideal d) Bright

3 is a way of traveling that doesn't damage the environment.
a) Safari b) Eco-tourism c) Sailing d) Hiking

4 In eco-tourism, people stay in a accommodation, not large hotels.
a) difficult b) large c) simple d) high

5 Eco-tourism is It doesn't pollute the environment.
a) expensive b) hard c) sustainable d) worse

6 Mohamed Salah is a very football player.
a) popular b) historical c) traditional d) close

7 This area contains many of migrating birds. الدقهلية - إدارة بلقاس 2024
a) species b) spaces c) spices d) spoons

8 When people learn about wildlife, they want to it. أسيوط - إدارة الفتح 2024
a) protect b) buy c) damage d) hurt

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

dive – desert – historical – sustainable

إدارة منفلوط - أسيوط 2024

Egypt is an amazing country. There are many(1)..... places to visit in Egypt. People can go snorkeling in the Red Sea, go on a(2)..... safari, climb mountains, or sail on the Nile. So tourism is important but eco-tourism is becoming very popular, too. Eco-tourism is a way of traveling that doesn't damage the environment. It's more(3)..... than traditional tourism, and it is designed to protect nature.

3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1 cook – under – We'll – the – meals – stars.
.....

2 mustn't – trash – We – in – leave – desert – the.
.....

3 should – animal – We – habitats – protect. إدارة ديروط - أسيوط 2024
.....

4 mustn't – birds – We – scare – the. أسيوط - إدارة ديروط 2024
.....

4 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1 People must (respected) nature. إدارة دبروط - أسيوط 2024 SB

2 We mustn't (scaring) birds or animals.

3 You (must) walk in the desert when it's hot. أسيوط - إدارة القوصية 2024

4 We mustn't(ate) in the library.

5 You must (listening) to your teacher in the class.

6 They must (being) careful when they use the knife.

7 Ahmed (mustn't) be careful while crossing the road.

8 You must (brushed) your teeth every day. القاهرة - إدارة الجمالية 2024

9 You(have must) a shower every day.

10 I mustn't (was) late for school.

5 Punctuate the following:

1 egypt is an amazing country

.....

2 we must bring a tent

.....

6 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements:



الدقهلية - إدارة بلقاس 2024

"Eco-tourism"

more sustainable – simple accommodation – wildlife watching

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



Lesson 3

Watch a video

A The Benefits of Eco-tourism فوائد السياحة البيئية

1. Look and read: انظر واقرأ:

Listening script page 64 SB

هذا النص مأخوذ من كتاب دليل المعلم.

My presentation today is about eco-tourism and why it is a good idea. Egypt is a very beautiful country, so we must look after it. However, lots of people want to visit Egypt because it is a very interesting place.

عرضى اليوم عن السياحة البيئية وسبب كونها فكرة جيدة. مصر بلد جميل جدًّا، لذا يجب أن نعتنى به. ومع ذلك، يرغب الكثير من الناس فى زيارة مصر لأنها مكان مثير للاهتمام للغاية.

It is good if we have lots of visitors, but tourism can sometimes mean too many big hotels and too much traffic. This can cause problems. Eco-tourism is good because people can visit and enjoy the environment but not in a way that damages the environment. These are my ideas about why I think eco-tourism is a good idea:

من الجيد أن يكون لدينا عدد كبير من الزوار، لكن السياحة قد تعنى فى بعض الأحيان وجود عدد كبير جدًّا من الفنادق الكبيرة وحركة مرور كبيرة جدًّا. هذا قد يسبب مشاكل. السياحة البيئية جيدة لأن الناس يمكنهم زيارة البيئة والاستمتاع بها ولكن ليس بطريقة تضر بالبيئة. هذه هى أفكارى حول سبب اعتقادى أن السياحة البيئية فكرة جيدة:

If people learn more about the environment, they will want to protect it. If tourists take care of the places they visit, they will cause less damage to the environment. If tourists stay in simple, eco-friendly accommodation, there won't be so many big hotels. If eco-tourism is successful, it will create new jobs for the local people.

إذا تعلم الناس المزيد عن البيئة، فسوف يرغبون فى حمايتها. إذا اهتم السائحون بالأماكن التى يزورونها، فإنهم سيتسببون فى ضرر أقل للبيئة. إذا أقام السائحون فى أماكن مبنية بسيطة وصديقة للبيئة، فلن يكون هناك الكثير من الفنادق الكبيرة. إذا نجحت السياحة البيئية، فإنها ستخلق فرص عمل جديدة للسكان المحليين.

Thank you for listening. Are there any questions? شكرًا على استماعكم. هل هناك أية أسئلة؟

Vocabulary

presentation	عرض تقديمى	look after = take care of	يعتنى بـ ...	traffic	حركة مرورية
less damage	ضرر أقل	eco-friendly (adj.)	صديق للبيئة	create new jobs	تخلق فرص عمل
miss the deadline	يتأخر عن الموعد النهائى	campsite	مخيم/معسكر	go sightseeing	يشاهد المعالم السياحية
a bit boring	ممل إلى حد ما	hard work	عمل شاق	provide jobs	توفر فرص العمل
view	منظر طبيعى	relaxing (adj.)	مريح	eco-tourist	سائح بيئى
recycle trash	يعيد تدوير المخلفات	whenever possible	متى أمكن	support	يدعم
keen (adj.)	حريص	try out	يجرب	cycling	ركوب الدراجات
explore	يستكشف	Good for you!	أحسنت!	local communities	المجتمعات المحلية

B Language Focus

The Present Simple Tense زمن المضارع البسيط

Affirmative Form: صيغة الإثبات:

I/ We/ They/ You + (inf.) الفعل فى المصدر

e.g. I go to school on foot.

He/ She/ It + (inf. + s, es, ies)

e.g. Lama visits her grandparents every Friday.

e.g. She watches TV in the evening.

e.g. Omar studies his lessons in the afternoon.

Negative Form: صيغة النفى:

I/ We/ They/ You + don't + (inf.) الفعل فى المصدر

e.g. We don't have eggs for breakfast.

He/ She/ It + doesn't + (inf.) الفعل فى المصدر

e.g. Ali doesn't play basketball.

Check

Choose the correct answer:

1 They (rides – ride – riding – to ride) their bikes to school.
2 Huda (play – plays – playing – to play) tennis at the weekend.
3 Doaa and Asmaa (don't – doesn't – aren't – haven't) have a car.
4 The cat doesn't (eat – eats – eating – ate) grass.

The Future Simple Tense زمن المستقبل البسيط

Affirmative Form: صيغة الإثبات:

Subject (الفاعل) + will + (inf.) الفعل فى المصدر

e.g. We will meet at the club tomorrow.

Negative Form: صيغة النفى:

Subject (الفاعل) + will not (won't) + (inf.) الفعل فى المصدر

e.g. Soha won't travel next week.

Check

Choose the correct answer:

1 I (visited – visit – will visit – visits) my grandpa next week.
2 She (isn't – won't – don't – doesn't) come to my party tomorrow.
3 Mazen won't (studies – studying – studied – study) tonight.

If (First Conditional) لو الشرطية (الحالة الأولى)

We use "If (First Conditional)" to talk about things that are likely to happen in the future.

نستخدم "If" الحالة الشرطية الأولى للحديث عن الأشياء التى من المحتمل أن تحدث فى المستقبل.

أداة الشرط — فعل الشرط — جواب الشرط

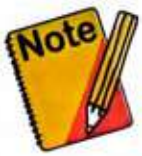
If + present simple, subject (الفاعل) + will/will not + (inf.) الفعل فى المصدر ـــــ .

e.g. If I am hungry, I will eat a snack.

جواب الشرط — أداة الشرط — فعل الشرط

Subject (الفاعل) + will/will not + (inf.) الفعل فى المصدر ـــــ if + present simple

e.g. He will miss the bus if he doesn't leave now.



لاحظ الاختصارات:

will = 'll

e.g. If people learn more about the environment, they'll want to protect it.

will not = won't

e.g. If tourists stay in simple accommodation, there won't be so many big hotels.

Check

Choose the correct answer:

1 If you (go – goes – went – going) to bed late tonight, you won't get up early tomorrow. SB

2 If they study hard, they will (passed – pass – passing – passes) the exam.

3 If she (finish – finishes – finished – finishing) her homework, she will play some video games.

4 If it (don't – aren't – isn't – doesn't) rain, we'll go to the beach.

5 If we (don't – isn't – doesn't – didn't) wear a coat, we will feel cold.

6 If it's sunny this weekend, we (do – are – will – is) go to the park.

7 If we (has – have – having – had) time, we'll watch TV.

8 If it gets cloudy, we will not (playing – plays – played – play) outside.

9 If Soha and Omar (saving – saved – save – saves) money, they will buy a new car.

10 If Hana (doesn't – do – didn't – don't) invite me, I won't come to the party.

CLIL: Science

Bird Migration هجرة الطيور

2. Listen, point, and say: استمع، أشر وقل:

Main vocabulary



pelican بجعة



kingfisher طائر الرفراف



swift طائر السمام



eagle نسر

Extra vocabulary

journey	رحلة طويلة	across	عبر	North Africa	شمال إفريقيا
Europe	أوروبا	northern (adj.)	شمالى	European (adj.)	أوروبى
falcon	صقر	flock	سرب (قطيع)	Mediterranean coasts	سواحل البحر الأبيض المتوسط
oases	واحات	Lake Qarun	بحيرة قارون	flamingos	طيور النحام

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعـــال منتظمـة

Present		Past	Present		Past
migrate	يهاجر	migrated	seem	يبدو	seemed
use	يستخدم	used	try	يحاول	tried

Irregular verbs أفعـــال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
leave	يغادر	left	make	يصنع	made
know	يعرف	knew	spend	يقضى	spent

Expressions and Phrases

because of	بسبب	hotter than	أكثر سخونة من	such as	مثل
flock of birds	قطيع (سرب) من الطيور	along the Red Sea	على امتداد البحر الأحمر	year after year	سنة تلو الأخرى
for the first time	للمرة الأولى	get to	يصل إلى	spend a long time	يقضى وقتًا طويلًا

Take care!

لاحظ أن كلمة (oasis) بمعنى واحة جمعها (oases) بمعنى واحات.

A long journey رحلة طويلة

3. Look and read: انظر واقرأ:



Many birds migrate to and from Egypt, and across it, because of where it is in the world. North Africa is hotter than Europe, so in winter, many birds leave northern European countries and fly to Egypt and other warmer places. This means that lots of interesting birds migrate to Egypt, such as eagles, falcons, and swifts.

تهاجر العديد من الطيور من وإلى مصر، وعبرها، بسبب موقعها في العالم. شمال إفريقيا أكثر دفئًا من أوروبا، لذلك في فصل الشتاء، تغادر العديد من الطيور بلدان شمال أوروبا وتطير إلى مصر وغيرها من الأماكن الأكثر دفئًا. وهذا يعني أن الكثير من الطيور المثيرة للاهتمام تهاجر إلى مصر، مثل النسور والصقور وطيور السمام.

Many water birds migrate to Egypt, too. You can often see large flocks of birds such as pelicans near water, along the Red Sea and Mediterranean coasts, as well as on the Nile. These birds often eat fish or plants that live in rivers, lakes, oases, and seas. Lake Qarun in Fayoum is a good place to see flamingos.

تهاجر العديد من الطيور المائية إلى مصر أيضًا. يمكنك في كثير من الأحيان رؤية أسراب كبيرة من الطيور مثل البجع بالقرب من المياه، على طول البحر الأحمر وسواحل البحر الأبيض المتوسط، وكذلك على نهر النيل. غالبًا ما تأكل هذه الطيور الأسماك أو النباتات التي تعيش في الأنهار والبحيرات والواحات والبحار. بحيرة قارون في الفيوم مكان جيد لرؤية طيور النحام.

Some birds fly very long distances, making the same journey year after year. Even young birds that migrate for the first time seem to know how to get to the place they need to be. How do these birds know where to go? They might use the sun, the stars, or the things they can see on the way. Scientists have spent a long time trying to find out how they do this!

تطير بعض الطيور لمسافات طويلة جدًا، وتقوم بنفس الرحلة سنة تلو الأخرى. حتى الطيور الصغيرة التي تهاجر لأول مرة يبدو أنها تعرف كيفية الوصول إلى المكان الذي تحتاج أن تكون فيه. كيف تعرف هذه الطيور إلى أين تذهب؟ قد يستخدمون الشمس أو النجوم أو الأشياء التي يمكنهم رؤيتها في الطريق. لقد أمضى العلماء وقتًا طويلًا في محاولة معرفة كيفية القيام بذلك!

Check

1 Why do many birds migrate to and from Egypt?

.....

2 What do migrating birds eat? SB

.....

Pronunciation

4. Listen and say: استمع وقل:

A syllable: is a part of a word that contains a single vowel sound.

المقطع الصوتي: هو جزء من كلمة، ويحتوى على صوت متحرك واحد.

e.g. fal-con

two-syllable words
كلمات ذات مقطعين

ea-gles

weath-er

fal-con

care-ful

tour-ism

E-gypt

three-syllable words
كلمات ذات ثلاثة مقاطع

king-fish-er

pel-i-can

fla-min-go

suc-cess-ful

snor-kel-ing

im-por-tant

Stressed syllable المقطع المشدد عليه

It is a part of a word which is said more strongly than the other parts.

هو جزء من الكلمة يتم نطقه بقوة أكبر من الأجزاء الأخرى.

Most two-syllable words have the stress on the first syllable.

معظم الكلمات ذات المقطعين يكون التشديد على المقطع الأول.

eagles / weather / falcon / careful / tourism / Egypt

Three-syllable words can have the stress on the first syllable or the second syllable.

الكلمات ذات الثلاثة مقاطع يكون المقطع المشدد هو المقطع الأول أو الثانى.

kingfisher / pelican / flamingo / successful / snorkeling / important

Practice

Lesson 3

practice more

• Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

1 Many birds to and from Egypt.
a) feed b) migrate c) eat d) sleep

2 North Africa is than Europe.
a) heavier b) colder c) slower d) hotter

3 Many birds leave northern European countries to places.
a) warmer b) wider c) smaller d) cooler

4 Birds such as, falcons, and swifts migrate to Egypt.
a) chickens b) ducks c) eagles d) pelicans

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 of birds fly long distances.
a) Tours b) Flocks c) Trips d) Journeys

2 Birds to find warmer weather.
a) migrate b) live c) prefer d) spend

3 Tourists must of the place they visit.
a) seem b) look like c) take care d) leave

4 accommodation is good for the environment.
a) Big b) Expensive c) Eco-friendly d) Large

5 Birds make the same every year when they migrate.
a) trip b) tour c) picnic d) journey

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

coasts – eat – flocks – deserts

Many water birds migrate to Egypt. You can often see large(1)..... of birds such as pelicans near water, along the Red Sea and Mediterranean(2)....., as well as on the Nile. These birds often(3)..... fish or plants that live in rivers, lakes, oases, and seas. Lake Qarun in Fayoum is a good place to see flamingos.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

Many birds migrate to and from Egypt, and across it, because of where it is in the world. North Africa is hotter than Europe, so in winter, many birds leave northern European countries and fly to Egypt and other warmer places. Many water birds

migrate to Egypt, too. You can often see large flocks of birds such as pelicans near water, along the Red Sea and Mediterranean coasts, as well as on the Nile. These birds often eat fish or plants that live in rivers, lakes, oases, and seas. Lake Qarun in Fayoum is a good place to see flamingos.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 The general idea of the text is about

a) Egypt b) the weather

c) bird migration d) northern European countries

2 You can often see large of birds near water.

a) schools b) flocks c) herds d) teams

B Answer the following questions:

3 Why do many birds migrate to Egypt?

.....

4 What do water birds eat?

.....

5 Where is Lake Qarun?

.....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1 water – migrate – Many – Egypt – birds – to.

.....

2 fly – can – long – Birds – distances – very.

.....

3 take – environment – Eco-tourists – care – the – of.

.....

إدارة الفتايم - أسيوط 2024

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1 If it rains, I will (staying) at home.

2 If I'm not busy tomorrow, I (be) help you.

3 If we (not run) quickly, we'll miss the bus.

4 If it(snow), we'll go skiing.

5 If Omar comes home early, his mother (not) be angry.

6 If you (presses) this button, the computer will switch off.

7 If he (feel) tired, he will go to the doctor.

8 If she doesn't (works) hard, she won't pass the exam.

9 I (be) surprised if he comes early.

الدقهلية - إدارة بلقاس 2024



Lessons 4 & 5

Writing & Project

Watch a video

1. Listen and say: استمع وقل:

Main vocabulary

Main vocabulary

blog مدونة	The Ras Mohammed National Park محمية رأس محمد الوطنية	Sinai Peninsula شبه جزيرة سيناء
flood فيضان	drought جفاف	fire حريق

Extra vocabulary

safe (adj.) آمن	planet كوكب	litter قمامة
space مساحة	garden box حوض الزرع	locals سكان محليون
weather الطقس	shark سمك القرش	brightly colored (adj.) زاهية الألوان

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعـــال منتظمـة

Present	Past	Present	Past
waste يهدر	wasted	drop يسقط	dropped
recycle يعيد تدوير ...	recycled	scuba dive يغوص	scuba dived

Irregular verbs أفعـــال غير منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
hurt يؤذى	hurt	cut down يقطع	cut down

Expressions and Phrases

part of جزء من	famous for مشهور بـ	waste water يهدر المياه
drop litter يلقى القمامة على الأرض	cut down trees يقطع الأشجار	sea life حياة بحرية

Definitions

a habitat	a place where an animal or plant lives	مكان حيث يعيش الحيوان أو النبات

Important sentences جمل هامـة

* Animals need safe places to live, find food, and look after their babies.
تحتاج الحيوانات إلى أماكن آمنة للعيش، وإيجاد الطعام، والاعتناء بصغارهم.
* There are lots of different habitats in Egypt, such as the desert, sea, mountains, and rivers.
يوجد العديد من البيئات الطبيعية المختلفة فى مصر، مثل الصحراء، البحر، والجبال والأنهار.
* To protect these habitats, we mustn't waste water or drop litter.
للحفاظ على تلك البيئات الطبيعية، يجب علينا ألا نهدر المياه أو نلقى القمامة.
* We can recycle paper, so people don't cut down the trees.
نستطيع أن نعيد تدوير الورق، حتي لا يقطع الناس الأشجار.

Writing

2. Look and read: انظر واقرأ:

A blog مدونة

Home الصفحة الرئيسية | Archive السجل | Contact للتواصل | Pages الصفحات

Hello, I'm Arwa – welcome to my blog! I'm writing today about something which I think is really important.

I think we should all try to protect animal habitats. Animals need safe places to live, find food, and look after their babies. They are part of our planet, so we must make sure that the things we do don't hurt them.

مرحبًا، أنا أروى - مرحبًا بك فى مدونتى! أكتب اليوم عن شىء أعتقد أنه مهم حقًا.
أعتقد أننا يجب أن نحاول جميعًا حماية بيئات الحيوانات. تحتاج الحيوانات إلى أماكن آمنة للعيش فيها، والعثور على الطعام، ورعاية أطفالها. إنهم جزء من كوكبنا، لذا يجب علينا التأكد من أن الأشياء التى نقوم بها لا تؤذيهم.

There are lots of different habitats in Egypt, such as the desert, sea, mountains, and rivers. It is good for everybody if we protect these habitats. For example, when a habitat is healthy, lots of animals can live in one place. With good eco-tourism, people can come on wildlife watching holidays. This is good for the country, and good for the people, too. When people learn about wildlife, they want to protect it.

هناك الكثير من البيئات الطبيعية المختلفة فى مصر، مثل الصحراء والبحار والجبال والأنهار. إنه أمر جيد للجميع إذا قمنا بحماية تلك البيئات. على سبيل المثال، عندما تكون بيئة الحيوان صحية، يمكن للعديد من الحيوانات أن تعيش فى مكان واحد. ومع السياحة البيئية الجيدة، يمكن للناس أن يأتوا لقضاء إجازات لمشاهدة الحياة البرية. وهذا أمر جيد للدولة، وجيد للناس أيضًا. عندما يتعلم الناس عن الحياة البرية، فإنهم يريدون حمايتها.

We can all think about things we can do to protect habitats. For example, we mustn't waste water or drop litter. We can recycle paper, so people don't cut down trees. We can also plant flowers and plants, because these are great for birds and insects. You don't need a lot of space – here's a garden box I made for my window!

يمكننا جميعًا التفكير فى الأشياء التى يمكننا القيام بها لحماية البيئات الطبيعية. على سبيل المثال، يجب ألا نهدر الماء أو نلقى القمامة. يمكننا إعادة تدوير الورق، حتى لا يقطع الناس الأشجار. يمكننا أيضًا زراعة الزهور والنباتات، لأنها مفيدة للطيور والحشرات. لا تحتاج إلى مساحة كبيرة - إليك صندوق الحديقة الذى صنعته لنافذتى!

Check

Choose the correct answer:

1 Animals need (hot – safe – cold – wet) places to look after their babies.
2 There are many (habitats – countries – planets – oceans) in Egypt.
3 We mustn't (safe – waste – drop – throw) water.

3. Look and read: انظر واقرأ:

Causes and Effects الأسباب والنتائج

Causes الأسباب	Effects النتائج
There are floods, droughts, or fires. هناك فيضانات أو جفاف أو حرائق.	Animal habitats are damaged. تضرر البيئات الحيوانية.
Animal habitats are damaged. تضرر البيئات الحيوانية.	Animals don't have safe places to live, find food, or look after babies. لن يكون لدى الحيوانات أماكن آمنة للعيش فيها أو العثور على الطعام أو رعاية الصغار.
A habitat is safe and healthy. البيئة الطبيعية آمنة وصحية.	Lots of animals can live there. يمكن أن يعيش الكثير من الحيوانات هناك.
We recycle paper. نقوم بإعادة تدوير الورق.	Trees aren't cut down. لن يتم قطع الأشجار.
We grow plants and flowers. نزرع النباتات والزهور.	Birds and insects have food. سيكون لدى الطيور والحشرات طعام.

B Language Notes

Conjunctions الروابط

A conjunction is a word that is used to connect words, phrases, and clauses.
الروابط هى كلمة تستخدم للربط بين كلمات، عبارات، أو جمل.

and

We use "and" to join two similar ideas together.
تستخدم «و» للربط بين فكرتين متشابهتين.

e.g. We saw turtles, pelicans, and lizards when we went wildlife watching.

but

We use "but" to join two contrasting ideas.
تستخدم «لكن» للربط بين فكرتين متناقضتين.

e.g. This is a beautiful river, but there is pollution in it now.

so

We use "so" to show the result.
تستخدم «لذلك» لتوضيح النتيجة.

reason السبب		result النتيجة
I was tired, أنا كنت متعبًا.	so ولذلك	I didn't go to work. لم أذهب للعمل.

because

We use "because" to show the reason.
تستخدم «لأن» لتوضيح السبب.

result النتيجة		reason السبب
I didn't go to work لم أذهب للعمل.	because لأن	I was tired. أنا كنت متعبًا.

Check

Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1 Omar likes to swim (but) play tennis.
2 I went to the doctor(so) I was ill.
3 The children went to the zoo to see lions, tigers, ... (because) giraffes.
4 The weather was good, ... (so) I didn't have time to go for a picnic.
5 It was cold yesterday, ... (because) I wore a coat.
6 I like chocolate (and) I don't like chips.

Project

The Ras Mohammed National Park محمية رأس محمد الوطنية

4. Look and read: انظر واقرأ:



The Ras Mohammed National Park on the Red Sea is a fantastic area for locals and tourists to visit. This beautiful area on the Sinai Peninsula is famous for its sea life, warm water, and amazing weather. People come from all over the world to snorkel and scuba dive here.

تعد محمية رأس محمد الوطنية على البحر الأحمر منطقة رائعة يمكن للسكان المحليين والسياح زيارتها. تشتهر هذه المنطقة الجميلة في شبه جزيرة سيناء بالحياة البحرية والمياه الدافئة والطقس المذهل. يأتي الناس من جميع أنحاء العالم للغوص هنا.

You can see coral reefs and lots of brightly colored fish, and maybe sharks. There is lots of other wildlife, too, and it is a great place for bird watching.

يمكنك رؤية الشعاب المرجانية والكثير من الأسماك زاهية الألوان، وربما أسماك القرش. يوجد العديد من الحياة البرية الأخرى، أيضًا، وهو مكان رائع لمشاهدة الطيور.

The National Park is protected, but people are allowed to visit. Because it is so beautiful, lots of visitors come and ride boats, or swim and snorkel in the sea.

الحديقة الوطنية محمية، ولكن يُسمح للناس بزيارتها. ولأنها جميلة جدًّا، يأتي الكثير من الزوار ويركبون القوارب، أو يسبحون ويغطسون في البحر.

Check

Choose the correct answer:

1 People come to Ras Mohammed to (scuba – snorkel – swim – play) dive.

2 Ras Mohammed is a great place for (turtle – bird – shark – insects) watching.

3 People come to (play – fly – hike – snorkel) in the Red Sea.

Practice

Lessons 4 & 5

• Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

1 The Ras Mohammed National Park is on the Sea.
a) Dead b) Red c) Mediterranean d) Nile

2 Ras Mohammed National Park is famous for its water.
a) ice b) hot c) warm d) cold

3 People come to and scuba dive here.
a) ski b) snorkel c) study d) skate

4 You can see and lots of brightly colored fish.
a) plants b) trees c) falcons d) coral reefs

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

wildlife – habitats – healthy – unhealthy

There are lots of different habitats in Egypt, such as the desert, sea, mountains, and rivers. It is good for everybody if we protect these(1)..... . For example, when a habitat is(2)....., lots of animals can live in one place. With good eco-tourism, people can come on(3)..... watching holidays. When people learn about wildlife, they want to protect it.

3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1 litter – or – waste – We – water – drop – mustn't.
.....

2 should – animal – try to – habitats – We – protect.
.....

3 Egypt, – types – there are – In – many – of habitats.
.....

4 Animals – to – need – places – live in – safe.
.....

5 cut – mustn't – People – trees – down – the.
.....

4 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1 This was a beautiful river, ... (because) there is pollution in it now.

2 Lama likes tea(so) coffee.

3 Hazem is sick, ... (but) he will see a doctor.

4 Ola is so happy(and) she passed the exam.

5 I have a headache(but) a fever.

6 They like reading, ...(so) they don't like swimming.

7 She gets high marks (so) she studies hard.

8 Omar has a cold, ...(but) he can't go to school.

9 (So) I was ill, I stayed at home.

10 She was tired, ...(because) she couldn't run fast.

الدقهلية - إدارة بلقاس 2024

5 Punctuate the following:

1 There are lots of different habitats in egypt

.....

2 When people learn about wildlife they want to protect it

.....

6 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements:

اجاب عنه صفحة 285

"The Ras Mohammed National Park"

fantastic area – Sinai Peninsula – famous for

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Unit 10 REVIEW



يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من مراجعة أهم الأجزاء التى وردت بالوحدة.

Lesson (1)

proverbs	أمثال	successful	ناجح
similar	متشابه	careful	مهتم/ حريص
real	حقيقى	sensible	منطقى/ عقلانى
feathers	ريش	true	حقيقى
well-known	مشهور	exactly	بالظبط
phrase	عبارة / شبه جملة	worm	دودة
nest	عش	plans	خطط

Lesson (2)

eco-tourism	سياحة بيئية	sustainable	مستمر
accommodation	مكان المبيت	bird-watching	مشاهدة الطيور
go on a desert safari	يقوم برحلة سفارى صحراوية	sailing on the Nile	الإبحار فى النيل
historical	تاريخى	taking photos	التقاط الصور
habitat	موطن / بيئة طبيعية	going on safari	الذهاب فى رحلة سفارى
simple	بسيط	ideal	مثالى
tourists	سياح	hiking	التنزه
species	أنواع/ فصائل	snorkeling	الغطس

Lesson (3)

presentation	عرض تقديمى	traffic	حركة مرورية
eco-tourist	سائح بيئى	campsite	مخيم/ معسكر
eco-friendly	صديق للبيئة	pelican	بجعة
swift	طائر السمامر	eagle	نسر
kingfisher	طائر الرفراف	falcon	صقر
oases	واحات	flamingoes	طيور النحام
cycling	ركوب الدراجات	recycle trash	يعيد تدوير المخلفات

Lessons (4 & 5)

The Ras Mohammed National Park	محمية رأس محمد الوطنية	blog	مدونة
scuba dive	يغوص	fire	حريق
Sinai Peninsula	شبه جزيرة سيناء	sea life	حياة بحرية
brightly colored	زاهية الألوان	drought	جفاف
litter	قمامة	locals	سكان محليون
garden box	حوض الزرع	flood	فيضان

Language Focus

1. must / mustn't

Affirmative Form:

Subject + must + (inf).

e.g. My parents must bring a tent.

Negative Form:

Subject + mustn't + (inf).

e.g. We mustn't swim here.

2. If (First Conditional)

If + present simple, subject + will + infinitive verb.

e.g. If I am hungry, I will eat a snack.

e.g. If he doesn't leave now, he'll miss the bus.

3. Conjunctions

(and) ⟶ two similar ideas — e.g. I like reading books and drawing pictures.

(but) ⟶ two contrasting ideas — e.g. Nadia likes swimming, but she doesn't like hiking.

(because) ⟶ to show reason — e.g. Dad went to bed early because he was tired.

(so) ⟶ to show result — e.g. Nader was late, so he took a taxi.

Unit 10 CHECK YOUR VOCABULARY



تأكد من حفظك لكلمات الدروس قبل البدء فى إجابة اختبار الوحدة.

Lesson 1

متشابه		ناجح	
منطقى/ عقلانى		مهتم/ حريص	
أمثال		حقيقى	
دودة		ريش	
خطط		عش	
يجرؤ/ لا يخاف		مشهور	

Lesson 2

مثالى		السياحة البيئية	
أنواع/ فصائل		مكان المبيت	
التصوير تحت الماء		رحلات	
الغطس		الشعب المرجانية	
التنزه		الذهاب فى رحلة سفارى	
الإبحار فى النيل		مشاهدة الطيور	
التقاط الصور		موطن/ بيئة طبيعية	

Lesson 3

بجعة		نسر	
طائر الرفراف		طائر السمام	
يشاهد المعالم السياحية		رحلة طويلة	
بحيره قارون		طيور النحام	
سرب (قطيع)		حركة مرورية	

Lessons 4 & 5

حريق		مدونة	
آمن		شبه جزيرة سيناء	
كوكب		سمك القرش	
حوض الزرع		قمامة	
سكان محليون		فيضان	
جفاف		محمية رأس محمد الوطنية	

WRITING TIME



تجميعة لأهم موضوعات الوحدة

لكى تتمكن من كتابة الموضوعات بشكل مميز، اتبع هذه الخطوات.

How to write about Eco-tourism:

- Eco-tourism is + (تعريفها).
- It's + (أهم ما يميزها).
- It's designed to + (أهميتها للطبيعة).
- People stay in + (الأماكن التى يسكن فيها الناس ووصفها).
- They mustn't + (ذكر شىء من الأشياء التى تدمر البيئة).
- Many people like + (أنشطة يقوم بها الناس).

"Eco-tourism"

Eco-tourism is a way of traveling that doesn't damage the environment. It's more sustainable than traditional tourism. It's designed to protect nature. People stay in simple accommodation, not large hotels. They mustn't travel in ways that cause lots of pollution. Many people like wildlife watching and eco-tourism is a good way for people to do this.

How to write about bird migration:

- Many birds migrate + (ذكر سبب الهجرة).
- These birds eat + (ذكر ما يأكله الطيور المائية المهاجرة).
- (اسم مكان مشهور بالطيور) + is a good place to see + (اسم الطيور المتواجدة هناك).
- Some birds + (وصف الهجرة).

"Bird migration"

Many birds migrate to and from Egypt and across it searching for a warmer place, such as eagles, falcons, and swifts. Many water birds migrate to Egypt, too. These birds often eat fish or plants that live in rivers, lakes, oases, and seas. Lake Qarun in Fayoum is a good place to see flamingos. Some birds fly very long distances, making the same journey year after year.

How to write a blog about animal habitats:

- Hello, I'm + (الاسم). Welcome to my blog!
- I'm writing today about + (اسم الموضوع).
- Animals need + (اذكر الأشياء التى تحتاج إليها الحيوانات للعيش).
- There are lots of different habitats in Egypt + (أمثلة).

Home الصفحة الرئيسية | Archive السجل | Contact تواصل | Pages الصفحات

Hello, I'm Ali. Welcome to my blog! I'm writing today about animal habitats. I think we should all try to protect animal habitats. Animals need safe places to live, find food, and look after their babies. There are lots of different habitats in Egypt, such as the desert, sea, mountains, and rivers.

Unit 10 STUDENT'S BOOK CORNER

يتضمن هذا الجزء أهم الأسئلة التى وردت بكتاب الوزارة.

1 Complete the sentences with must or mustn't:

1 You respect nature.

2 You scare birds or animals.

3 You leave trash in the desert.

4 You be careful in the natural environment.

5 You walk to school today because there are no buses.

6 You walk in the desert when it's hot.

2 Complete the sentences with the words from the box:

close – migrate – respect – similar – sustainable – wild

1 When people the environment, they want to protect it.

2 If you go bird-watching, you mustn't get too to the birds.

3 Eco-tourism is more than vacations which don't care about the environment.

4 When we visited the National Park, we saw many animals.

5 Many birds to find warmer weather in winter.

6 Things that are look the same or do the same things.

3 Complete the sentences:

1 If I (have) an important exam next term, I (study) for it.

2 If you (go) to bed late tonight, you (not/get up) early tomorrow.

3 If Omar (play) football for two hours, he(be) tired!

4 If she (feel) thirsty, she (drink) some water.

5 If we (not/work) together, we (miss) the deadline.

Test Yourself 30

UNIT 10

Listening

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: 4

(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

1 Next month, Salma is going on a
a) journey b) picnic c) tour d) trip

2 They will travel along the river in small
a) cars b) boats c) ships d) buses

3 They will camp in at night.
a) tents b) houses c) accommodation d) apartments

4 They will bring their because we'll see some amazing things.
a) cell phones b) tablets c) cameras d) computers

Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: 1.5

1 Eco-tourism is more than traditional tourism. الدقهلية - إدارة طلخا 2024
a) sustainable b) worse c) awful d) harmful

2 There are often large of water birds near lakes and oases.
a) flocks b) falcons c) flamingoes d) fish

3 Can you look after my dog when I go on? أسيوط - إدارة متفلوط 2024
a) homework b) reading c) pets d) vacation

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: 1.5

locals – snorkel – eat – Sinai

The Ras Mohammed National Park on the Red Sea is a fantastic area for(1)..... and tourists to visit. This beautiful area on the(2)..... Peninsula is famous for its sea life, warm water, and amazing weather. People come from all over the world to(3)..... and scuba dive here. You can see coral reefs and lots of brightly colored fish.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: 7

Eco-tourism is designed to protect nature. It is a way of traveling that does not damage the environment. Eco-tourists enjoy nature and they also do something to help the country they visit. For example, they can plant trees, stay in simple accommodation or travel in ways that do not cause lots of pollution. Egypt is famous for eco-tourism. Many people visit Siwa Oasis to see many migrating water birds. They can also go snorkeling in the Red Sea or sailing on the Nile. محافظة الدقهلية - إدارة دكرنس التعليمية 2024

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 The underlined pronoun "they" refers to

a) eco-tourists b) wild animals c) migrating birds d) locals

2 Siwa Oasis is a fantastic place to see migrating water

a) snakes b) cows c) birds d) fish

B Answer the following questions:

3 What is the main idea of the text?

4 What can eco-tourists do to help the country they visit?

5 Where can People go snorkeling?

Writing

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences: (1)

1 trash – mustn't – You – leave – desert – in the. الدقهلية - إدارة دكرنس 2024

.....

2 doesn't – Eco-tourism – the – damage – environment.

.....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets: (4)

1 If we (not work) together, we will miss the deadline. الدقهلية - إدارة دكرنس 2024

2 You must (is) careful in the natural environment. الدقهلية - إدارة منفلوط 2024

7 Punctuate the following: (4)

1 don t leave trash in the river

2 eco-tourism is designed to protect nature

8 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements: (7)



الدقهلية - إدارة طلخا 2024

"Bird migration"

Why do birds migrate? – How do birds know their way?

.....

.....

.....

.....



Assess your progress ★ ★ ★ ★ ★

< 50%	50 : 64%	65 : 84%	85 : 100%
Study again	Practice more	Solve more exams	Well done!

Unit 10 AL-AZHAR CORNER



تحتوى هذه الصفحة على أسئلة خاصة بمواصفات الأزهر.

1 Read and complete the dialogue:

wildlife – go – What – went – amazing

Youssef : Where did you last vacation?

Hani : I to the desert.

Youssef : did you see there?

Hani : I saw lots of; more animals live on the sand than you might think.

Youssef : That's

2 Read and circle the odd word out:

1	pelican	eagle	swift	flock	
2	migrate	leave	kingfisher	fly	
3	bird	successful	real	sensible	
4	play	study	feel	going	
5	snorkel	dive	sustainable	respect	

3 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

1 must – nature – People – respect.

.....

2 visiting – Omar – this – loves – place.

.....

3 bird – the – worm – The early – catches.

.....

4 very – distances – Migrating – fly – birds – long.

.....

5 are – Egypt – different – There – in – habitats.

.....

Unit 11

How can I help?

كيف يمكننى المساعدة؟



Unit Objectives

- **By the end of this unit, the student will be able to:**

- listen, read, research, and write about charity work and volunteering.
- use infinitives of purpose.
- read and understand three texts about mystery objects.
- listen to an interview about volunteering.
- use -ly and other adverbs.
- read and understand a story about two brothers.
- say words containing /sh/, /ch/, and /tch/.
- write a biography of a volunteer.
- create a leaflet about being a good citizen.

- **بنهاية هذه الوحدة، سيكون التلميذ قادرًا على أن:**

- يستمع، يقرأ، يبحث، ويكتب عن العمل الخيرى والتطوع.
- يستخدم صيغة المصدر لتوضيح الغرض.
- يقرأ ويفهم ثلاث نصوص عن أشياء غامضة.
- يستمع إلى مقابلة شخصية عن التطوع.
- يستخدم ظروف الأحوال بالـ ly وغيرها.
- يقرأ ويفهم قصة عن شقيقين.
- ينطق كلمات تحتوى على sh، ch، و tch.
- يكتب سيرة ذاتية لمتطوع.
- يصمم منشورًا عن كيف يكون مواطنًا صالحًا.

Did you know?

- There are *charities all over the world that help people, animals, and the planet. They help with many different things, including education, health, culture, and nature.

Find out!

- There are some different charities in Egypt. For example, Magdy Yacoub Heart *Foundation offers free and *specialized heart care to Egyptians.

* charities	جمعيات خيرية	* Foundation	مؤسسة	* specialized	متخصص



Lesson 1

Why Do You Want To Help?

لماذا تريد المساعدة؟

Watch a video

1. Listen, point, and say:

استمع، أشر وقل:

Main vocabulary

organization	مؤسسة	community	مجتمع
kindergarten class	حضانة / رياض الأطفال	paintings	رسومات

Extra vocabulary

particular (adj.)	محدد	project	مشروع	idea	فكرة
vegetable garden	حديقة نباتية	fresh (adj.)	طازج	popular (adj.)	محبوب / شائع
trash	قمامة	habitat	موطن / بيئة طبيعية	safer (adj.)	أكثر أمانًا
skills	مهارات	nervous (adj.)	متوتر	own (adj.)	خاص
neighbor	جار	stores	متاجر	alone	بمفردها

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعـــال منتظمـة

Present		Past	Present		Past
donate	يتبرع	donated	participate	يشارك	participated
support	يدعم / يساند	supported	volunteer	يتطوع	volunteered
decide	يقرر	decided	join	ينضم	joined
train	يتدرب	trained	paint	يرسم	painted

Irregular verbs أفعـــال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
choose	يختار	chose	grow	يزرع	grew
teach	يعلم	taught	think	يعتقد	thought

Expressions and Phrases

take part in = participate in	يشارك فى	give away	يتبرع
have to	يضطر إلى	so that	لكى
an after-school club	نادى ما بعد المدرسة	a bit nervous	متوتر قليلًا
get better at	يتحسن فى	really good fun	ممتعة جدًا حقًا
help out	يمد يده بالمساعدة	look forward to	يتطلع إلى
look nicer	تبدو أجمل	kind to	طيب مع
used to	اعتاد أن	look after	يعتنى بـ
get a bit older	تكبر قليلًا	look for	يبحث عن

Definitions

donate	يتبرع	to give something away to help a person or organization أن تتبرع بشيء لمساعدة شخص أو منظمة
participate	يشارك	to take part in something أن تساهم (تشارك) فى شيء ما
support	يدعم (يساند)	to do things that help a particular person or group أن تقوم بأشياء تساعد شخصًا ما أو مجموعة معينة
volunteer	يتطوع	to do a job or activity and not take any money for it أن تقوم بعمل أو نشاط ولا تأخذ أى أموال مقابل ذلك

Important sentences جمل هامة

* We started a project called Community Help.

لقد بدأنا مشروعا يسمى مساعدة المجتمع.

* We chose something to support other people or things in our community.

اخترنا شيئًا لدعم الأشخاص أو الأشياء الأخرى فى مجتمعنا.

* Some people wanted to start a vegetable garden in the school.

أراد بعض الأشخاص إنشاء حديقة نباتية فى المدرسة.

* Other people volunteered to help clean trash from the river.

تطوع أشخاص آخرون للمساعدة فى تنظيف القمامة من النهر.

* I decided to start an after-school club to teach the younger children football skills.

قررت أن أنشئ ناديًا بعد المدرسة لتعليم الأطفال الصغار مهارات كرة القدم.

Check

Choose the correct answer:

1 He was very happy to (participate – play – make – paint) in the project.

2 Ali always (looks after – takes part – gives away – decides) in the school activities.

3 Eslam likes to (grow – paint – support – decide) people who need help in his community.

4 I like buying (bad – ugly – fresh – old) fruits and vegetables.

5 We always (donate – participate – support – help) toys and money to the hospital.

6 Children under five go to (kindergarten – art – science – math) class.

How often does Tamer volunteer? كم مرة يتطوع تامر؟

2. Look and read: انظر واقرأ:

Hi, I'm Tamer. At school, we started a project called Community Help. We all had to choose something we could do to support other people or things in our community. There were lots of ideas. For example, some people wanted to start a vegetable garden in the school to grow fresh fruit and vegetables. That was really popular. Other people volunteered to help clean trash from the river, so that animals' habitats are safer.

مرحبًا، أنا تامر. فى المدرسة، بدأنا مشروعا يسمى "مساعدة المجتمع".. كان علينا جميعًا أن نختار شيئًا ما يمكننا القيام به لدعم الأشخاص أو الأشياء الأخرى فى مجتمعنا. كان هناك الكثير من الأفكار. على سبيل المثال، بعض الناس أرادوا إنشاء حديقة نباتية فى المدرسة لزراعة الفواكه والخضراوات الطازجة. كانت تلك الفكرة حقًا محبوبة جدًا. وتطوع أشخاص آخرون للمساعدة فى تنظيف القمامة من النهر، لكى تكون بيئات الحيوانات أكثر أمانًا.

I decided that I wanted to help children in my school. I love sports, so I started an after-school club to teach the younger children football skills. I was a bit nervous at first, but lots of children joined in and their parents were very happy. It was great to have so many children participating.



قررت مساعدة الأطفال فى مدرستى. أنا أحب الرياضة، لذلك أنشأت ناديًا بعد المدرسة لتعليم الأطفال الصغار مهارات كرة القدم. لقد كنت متوترًا قليلًا فى البداية، ولكن انضم الكثير من الأطفال، وكان آباؤهم سعداء للغاية. وكان من الرائع أن يشارك هذا العدد الكبير من الأطفال.

I teach the class after school on Wednesdays. The class is for 45 minutes, and we train and play games. I like seeing the children get better at football, and it's really good fun, too.

أقوم بتدريس الحصة بعد اليوم الدراسى أيام الأربعاء. مدة الحصة 45 دقيقة، ونحن نتدرب ونلعب الألعاب. أحب رؤية الأطفال وهم يتحسنون فى كرة القدم، و حقًا إنه أمر ممتع جدًا أيضًا.

3. Look and read: انظر واقرأ:

Reem



I love reading, so I decided to help out in the kindergarten class on a Thursday by reading to the children. I love reading stories with the younger children, and they like it too. We're starting up a project where they think of their own stories next week. I'm looking forward to that.

أحب القراءة؛ لذلك قررت أن أساعد فى حصة لرياض الأطفال يوم الخميس من خلال القراءة للأطفال. أحب قراءة القصص مع الأطفال الصغار، وهم يحبون ذلك أيضًا. سنبدأ الأسبوع القادم فى مشروع حيث يفكر الأطفال فى قصصهم الخاصة. أنا أتطلع إلى ذلك.

Ibrahim



My little sister was sick last month, and she was in the hospital. She's better now, but when we visited her, she was sad because she didn't like being there. I thought it would be nice to do something for children who are sick. My friends and I painted lots of big pictures of flowers, animals, beaches, and trees. Our parents donated lots of toys too. We took these and the paintings to the hospital to make the rooms look nicer.

كانت أختى الصغيرة مريضة الشهر الماضى، وكانت فى المستشفى. إنها أفضل الآن، ولكن عندما زرناها كانت حزينة لم تحب التواجد هناك. اعتقدت أنه سيكون لطيفًا أن تفعل شيئًا للأطفال المرضى. رسمت أنا وأصدقائى الكثير من الصور الكبيرة للزهور والحيوانات والشواطئ والأشجار. تبرع آباؤنا بالكثير من الألعاب أيضًا. أخذنا هذه اللعب واللوحات إلى المستشفى لجعل الغرف تبدو أجمل.

Mariam



My neighbor has always been kind to us. She used to help my mom look after me when I was younger. Now she's getting a bit older, and it's sometimes difficult for her to go shopping. So, I ask her what she needs, then I go to the stores and get it. I like to help her.

لطالما كانت جارتى دائمًا لطيفة معنا. كانت تساعد أمى فى الاعتناء بى عندما كنت أصغر سنًا. الآن أصبحت أكبر قليلًا، فى بعض الأحيان يكون من الصعب عليها الذهاب للتسوق. لذلك، أسألها عما تحتاج إليه، ثم أذهب إلى المتاجر وأحصل عليه. أحب أن أساعدها.

Practice

Lesson 1

• Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

1 Youssef is in grade
a) two b) four c) six d) nine

2 They started a project at
a) hospital b) school c) park d) office

3 People from the community to help.
a) volunteered b) donated c) cooked d) paid

4 They grew strawberries, oranges, and
a) bananas b) pineapples c) mangoes d) apples

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 We to help in the community. الدقهلية - إدارة بلقاس التعليمية 2024
a) play b) volunteer c) study d) go

2 I'm forward to working as a teacher.
a) taking b) looking c) doing d) training

3 A is the place to buy fruits and vegetables. أسيوط - إدارة القناييم التعليمية 2024
a) house b) bank c) hospital d) store

4 Fareeda likes to people in her community. أسيوط - إدارة القوصية التعليمية 2024
a) support b) grow c) make d) look

5 Teachers should be to their students. الدقهلية - إدارة بلقاس التعليمية 2024
a) kind b) type c) sort d) cruel

6 To "....." means to give something away to help a person or organization.
a) volunteer b) support c) donate d) participate

7 My mom sometimes helps at the school library.
a) on b) off c) out d) with

8 To take part in something means to الدقهلية - إدارة شربين التعليمية 2024
a) donate b) participate c) support d) volunteer

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

teachers – skills – teach – joined

I decided that I wanted to help children in my school. I love sports, so I started an after-school club to(1)..... the younger boys football(2)..... . Lots of them(3)..... in, so it was great to have many children participating.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

My name is Ola. I like to help my community and my friends too. Every Friday, I volunteer to help clean trash from the river so that animals' habitats are safer. I love animals. My friend Amira helps old people. It's difficult for them to go shopping, so she asks them what they need, and she goes to the stores and gets them the shopping. My friend Hana donates lots of toys to the children's hospital. My friend Laila helps out in the kindergarten. She reads stories to the younger children.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 The general idea of the text is about

a) helping the community b) making toys

c) reading stories d) helping animals

2 The word "volunteer" means doing an activity or a job and not taking any for it.

a) food b) money c) clothes d) stories

B Answer the following questions:

3 What does Ola like to do?

4 How does Amira help old people?

5 What does Hana donate?

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1 clean – Lara – trash – volunteers – the – to.

.....

2 donated – They – toys – and clothes – the hospital – to.

.....

3 help out – I – kindergarten – class – at – the.

.....

4 They – animals' – wanted to – better – habitats – make.

.....

6 Punctuate the following:

1 what day is the club

2 i help out in the kindergarten class on thursday.

Study — Lesson 2

Watch a video

A We Use This to Pick up The Trash نستخدم هذا لالتقاط القمامة

1. Listen, point, and say: استمع، أشر وقل:

Main vocabulary



nature camera كاميرا لتصوير الطبيعة



grabber لاقط/ خطاف



multi-grip مقبض متعدد الاستخدامات

games console	وحدة تحكم الألعاب	controller	جهاز التحكم
button	زر	joystick	عصا التحكم

Extra vocabulary

gloves	قفازات	metal (adj.)	معدني	stick	عصا
fingers	أصابع	handle	مقبض/ يد	day center	مركز رعاية نهاري
jars	برطمانات	part	جزء	forest	غابة
app	تطبيق	exhibition	معرض فني	fridge	ثلاجة
character	شخصية	home button	زر القائمة الرئيسية	menu	قائمة
action button	زر الحركة	directions	اتجاهات	information	معلومات
essays	مقالات	movies	أفلام	radio	راديو

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
pick up	يلتقط	picked up	squeeze	يعصر	squeezed
drop	يسقط	dropped	turn	يستدير	turned
install	يركب (يُنشئ)	installed	film	يصور	filmed
record	يسجل	recorded	press	يضغط	pressed
happen	يحدث	happened	control	يتحكم	controlled
photocopy	ينسخ صورة	photocopied	protect	يحمي	protected

Irregular verbs أفعـــال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
wear	يرتدى	wore	hold	يمسك	held
show	يعرض	showed	send	يرسل	sent

Expressions and Phrases

do a beach clean-up	يقوم بتنظيف الشاطئ	at the end	فى النهاية
at the top	فى الأعلى	old people	كبار السن
strong enough	قوى بشكل كافٍ	take off the tops	يخلع / ينزع الأغطية
during the day	أثناء النهار	turn on (the radio)	يشغل (الراديو)
pick up (the phone)	يرفع سماعة التليفون	take you back to	تعود بك إلى
move around	يحرك ...	use ... for	يستخدم ... من أجل
go over	يمر من أعلى	easy to use	سهلة الاستخدام

Definitions

button	زر	A button is something you press to make something happen. الزر هو شىء تضغط عليه لتجعل شيئًا ما يحدث.
joystick	عصا التحكم	A joystick is something you can move in different directions to control a computer game. عصا التحكم هى شىء يمكنك تحريكه فى اتجاهات مختلفة للتحكم فى لعبة الكمبيوتر.
controller	جهاز التحكم	A controller is something we use to play a computer game. جهاز التحكم هو شىء نستخدمه للعب لعبة كمبيوتر.

Take care!

كلمة (app) هى اختصار من كلمة (application) بمعنى تطبيق.

Check

Choose the correct answer:

1 The door has a (finger – stick – handle – jar).

2 You should use home (door – button – garden – action) to take you back to the menu.

3 There are a lot of trees and animals in the (bank – class – restaurant – forest).

4 She is my favorite (meal – character – color – sport) in the story.

5 Can you tell me the (doors – fingers – directions – buttons) to the library, please?

2. Look and read: انظر واقرأ:

Tamim

When we do a beach clean-up, we wear gloves to protect our hands. We carry black bags for the trash we collect. And look! We use this to pick up the trash. It's great fun to use. It's a long metal stick with two fingers at the end. The fingers open and close when you squeeze the handle at the top. You open and close the fingers to pick up the trash, then drop it in the bag. Mom says it's better than picking things up with your hands.



grabber
لاقط/ خطاف

عندما نقوم بتنظيف الشاطئ، نرتدى قفازات لحماية أيدينا. نحمل أكياسًا سوداء للقمامة التى نجمعها. وانظروا! نستخدم هذا لالتقاط القمامة. إنها ممتعة جدًا فى الاستخدام. إنها عصا معدنية طويلة بأصبعين فى نهايتها. تفتح الأصابع وتغلق عند الضغط على المقبض فى الأعلى. تقوم بفتح وإغلاق أصابع الخطاف لالتقاط القمامة، ثم تضعها فى الكيس. تقول أمى إنه أفضل من التقاط الأشياء بيديك.

Dalida

I volunteer at a day center for old people. Some old people can't open glass bottles and jars. Their hands aren't strong enough. So, they use this to take off the tops. This is how you use it. Hold the jar with one hand and put this on the top. Hold this part with your other hand, and then turn it around. It's really easy to use. I love showing this to the people at the day center.



multi-grip
مقبض متعدد الاستخدامات

أنا متطوع فى مركز رعاية نهارى لكبار السن. بعض كبار السن لا يستطيعون فتح الزجاجات والبرطمانات. أيديهم ليست قوية بما فيه الكفاية. لذلك، يستخدمون هذا لإزالة الأغطية. هذه هى الطريقة التى تستخدمها. امسك البرطمان بيد واحدة وضعها فى الأعلى. امسك هذا الجزء بيدك الأخرى، ثم قُم بتدويره. إنه حقًا سهل الاستخدام. أحب أن أعرض هذا على الأشخاص فى المركز النهارى.

Hamza

We're doing a wildlife project at school, and my teacher installed two of these in the forest. We're using them to film wildlife. He put one on the ground to film animals at night. He put the other in a tree to film birds during the day. Then we record how many animals and birds we see, and what they're doing. It's so interesting. We've learned a lot!



nature camera
كاميرا الحياة البرية

نحن نقوم بمشروع للحياة البرية فى المدرسة، وقام معلمى بتركيب اثنين منها فى الغابة. نحن نستخدمها لتصوير الحياة البرية. وضَعَ معلمى واحدة على الأرض لتصوير الحيوانات ليلًا. ووضع الأخرى فى شجرة لتصوير الطيور أثناء النهار. ثم نسجل عدد الحيوانات والطيور التى نراها و ماذا يفعلون. هذا ممتع حقا . لقد تعلمنا كثيرا .

Check

Choose the correct answer:

1 Some old people use a (handle – nature camera – grabber – multi-grip) to take off the tops of jars and glass bottles.

2 We installed two nature (grabbers – televisions – cameras – tablets) in the forest.

3. Listen, point, and say: استمع، أشر وقل:

Mom : Hi Amira. Is this your new games console? It looks great. What's this part for?
مرحبا أميرة. هل هذه وحدة تحكم الألعاب الجديدة الخاصة بك؟ تبدو رائعة. فيم يستخدم هذا الجزء؟

Amira : Oh, that's the controller. It's what you use to play the game.
أوه، هذا هو جهاز التحكم. هذا ما تستخدمينه للعب اللعبة.

Mom : Cool! And what does this do?
رائع! وماذا يفعل هذا؟

Amira : That's the home button. When you press it, it takes you back to the menu.
هذا زر الصفحة الرئيسية. عنما تضغط عليه، فإنه يعيدك إلى القائمة.

Mom : OK. And what are these buttons for?
حسناً. وما استخدامات هذه الأزرار؟

Amira : Those are the action buttons. You use them to tell your character to run, jump, or do other actions.
تلك هى أزرار الحركة. يمكنك استخدامها لإخبار شخصيتك بالجرى أو القفز أو القيام بحركات أخرى.

Mom : And what are these parts for?
وما استخدامات هذه الأجزاء؟

Amira : They're the joysticks. They help you move your character around.
إنها عصا التحكم. إنها تساعدك على تحريك شخصيتك.

Mom : OK. So, the home button takes you back to the menu, and the buttons and joysticks are for playing the game.
حسناً. إذاً، لذا، فإن زر الصفحة الرئيسية يعيدك إلى القائمة، والأزرار وعصا التحكم مخصصة للعب اللعبة.

Amira : That's right. Do you want to play a game with me?
هذا صحيح. هل تريدين أن تلعبى معى لعبة؟



controller
جهاز التحكم



laptop
كمبيوتر محمول

A: What do people use this object for? فيم يستخدم الناس هذا الشيء؟
B: People use this to play games or watch movies. You can use it to find information on the internet. You can also write essays and do your homework on it. You can't photocopy paper with it.
يستخدم الناس هذا لممارسة الألعاب أو مشاهدة الأفلام. يمكنك استخدامه للعثور على المعلومات على شبكة الإنترنت. يمكنك أيضًا كتابة المقالات والقيام بواجباتك المنزلية عليه. لا يمكنك تصوير الورق به.



headphone
سماعة الأذن

A: What is this part? ما هذا الجزء؟
B: That's the part that goes over your ears. هذا هو الجزء الذى يمر فوق أذنيك.



handle
مقبض

A: What is this part for? ما استخدامات هذا الجزء؟
B: This is the handle. It helps you control where you want to go.
هذا هو المقبض. يساعدك على التحكم فى المكان الذى تريد الذهاب إليه.



button
زر

A: What does this button on the radio do? فيم يستخدم هذا الزر الموجود على الراديو؟
B: This turns on the radio. هذا يشغل الراديو.



swimming mask
قناع السباحة

A: What do you use this for? فيم تستخدم هذا؟
B: You use this to swim under water. تستخدم هذا للسباحة تحت الماء.

B Language Focus

Infinitives of purpose صيغة المصدر لتوضيح الغرض

1. We use "to + a verb in the base form" to explain why we do something.
نستخدم «to + مصدر الفعل» لشرح سبب قيامنا بشيء ما.

to + (inf.) مصدر الفعل

e.g. He uses his computer to do his homework.

e.g. We go to the park to play football.

2. We also use "to + a verb in the base form" to answer questions with "Why".
نستخدم أيضًا «to + مصدر الفعل» للإجابة عن الأسئلة بـ «لماذا».

e.g. A: Why do you use a multi-grip?
B: To open jars.

Check

Choose the correct answer:

1 Eman went to the shopping mall (as – with – for – to) buy clothes.

2 They have pencils to (painting – paints – paint – painted) pictures.

3 A: (Why – Who – What – When) did your uncle go to Cairo?
B: To visit my grandma.

4 I use a key to (closes – closed – closing – close) the door.

5 She uses a wildlife camera (to – for – so – but) film animals.

6 Ahmed goes to the cinema to (watch – watching – watches – watched) movies.

7 A: (What – Which – Why – Where) do you wear gloves on a beach clean-up?
B: To protect my hands.

8 They travel to Alexandria to (visit – visits – visiting – visited) their grandparents.

Practice

Lesson 2

• Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

1 I volunteer at a day center for people.
a) young b) old c) short d) sad

2 I show old people how to open with a multi-grip.
a) books b) computers c) jars d) bags

3 I pick up the trash with a
a) camera b) grabber c) multi-grip d) hand

4 The grabber is very to use.
a) easy b) hard c) bad d) annoying

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 When we collect the trash, we wear to protect our hands.
أسيوط - إدارة منفلوط التعليمية 2024
a) shoes b) glasses c) gloves d) helmets

2 A is something you press to make something happen.
a) camera b) stick c) button d) handle

3 You can move in different directions to control a computer game with the
a) camera b) jars c) grip d) joystick

4 It's easier to use a grabber to the trash.
a) take off b) pick up c) help out d) look after

5 You study how to write a/an
a) game b) movie c) essay d) internet

6 A is the part of a games console that we use to play the game.
a) marble b) grabber c) multi-grip d) controller

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

أسيوط - إدارة ديروط التعليمية 2024

I'm Shady. I volunteer at a day center for old people. Some old people can't open glass bottles and jars. Their hands aren't strong enough. So they use multi-grips to take off the tops. This is how you use it. Hold the jar with one hand and put multi-grips on the top. Hold it with your other hand and turn it around. It's easy to use. I love showing this to the people at the day center.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 Shady helps people.
a) old b) young c) new d) ugly

2 Multi-grips are used to glass bottles and jars.
a) close b) open c) break d) buy

B Answer the following questions:

3 Where does Shady volunteer? _____

4 Why can't old people open bottles and jars? _____

5 What does Shady do for old people? _____

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1 school – We're – a wildlife – at – project – doing.

.....

2 by bus – her – cousins – see – Mona – to – traveled. الدقهلية - إدارة دكرنس التعليمية 2024

.....

3 for – this – What – use – do – you?

.....

4 films – The – birds – nature camera – animals – and.

.....

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1 They make cupcakes(for) sell in the market.

2 A: (What) do you use a grabber? B: To pick up the trash.

3 She uses a key to (opens) the door.

4 I bought a flower to (surprises) my mother. أسيوط - إدارة منفلوط التعليمية 2024

5 We volunteer (because) help old people.

6 He bought two tickets to (watching) the movie.

7 I went to the sports center to (played) volleyball.

8 A: Why did Mom use an app? B: (For) learn French.

9 A: (How) do we go to school? B: To learn. الدقهلية - إدارة تمرة التعليمية 2024

6 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements:

مجاب عنه صفحة 386

"Video games"

games console – controller – joysticks

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



Lesson 3

Watch a video

A It's Good to Give Back to The Community من الرائع رد الجميل للمجتمع

1. Listen and say: استمع وقل:

Main vocabulary

interview	مقابلة شخصية	volunteering	التطوع	community	المجتمع
fundraising	جمع التبرعات	charity	جمعية خيرية	rewarding (adj.)	مُجزٍ
citizens	مواطنون	experience	خبرة / تجربة	confidence	الثقة

Extra vocabulary

volunteer	متطوع	leader	قائد	event	حدث
trip	رحلة قصيرة	timetable	جدول زمنى	healthy diet	نظام غذائى صحى
advice	نصيحة	teenagers	مراهقون	life skills	مهارات حياتية
friendly (adj.)	ودود	abilities	قدرات	donations	تبرعات

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال:

Regular verbs أفعـــال منتظمـة

Present		Past	Present		Past
organize	ينظم	organized	deliver	يوصل	delivered
socialize	يكون علاقات اجتماعية	socialized	receive	يستلم / يستقبل	received

Irregular verbs أفعـــال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
begin	يبدأ	began	meet	يقابل	met

Expressions and Phrases

after-school volunteer group	مجموعة تطوعية بعد المدرسة	ever since = since then	منذ ذلك الحين
sports events	أحداث رياضية	interested in	مهتم بـ ...
isn't like	ليس مثل	make friends	يكون صداقات
give back	يرد الجميل	a friendly way	بطريقة ودودة
feel sure about	يشعر بالثقة	any way	بأى طريقة

Definitions

socialize	spend time with people in a friendly way	أن تقضى الوقت مع الناس بطريقة ودية
confidence	feeling sure about your abilities	الشعور بالثقة حول قدراتك
fundraising	collecting money for a charity	جمع المال للأعمال الخيرية
give back	to help others because you have received so much	أن تساعد الآخرين لأنك تلقيت الكثير

Important sentences جمل هامة

* Rawan Ibrahim is a community volunteer leader.

روان إبراهيم هى قائدة تطوعية مجتمعية.

* Rawan started volunteering when she was 13.

بدأت روان العمل التطوعى عندما كان عمرها ١٣ عامًا.

* Rawan began by helping the younger children with their reading and writing.

بدأت روان بمساعدة الأطفال الصغار فى القراءة والكتابة.

* Now she organizes the volunteers for fundraising activities.

الآن تنظِّم المتطوعين لأنشطة جمع التبرعات.

* This year, Rawan started volunteering with Food Box, a charity that delivers healthy meal boxes to families who need help.

هذا العام، بدأت روان العمل التطوعى مع «Food Box» ، وهى مؤسسة خيرية تقوم بتوصيل صناديق الوجبات الصحية للعائلات التى تحتاج إلى المساعدة.

Check

Choose the correct answer:

1 (Kids – Children – Teenagers – Old people) are people from age 13 to 19.

2 We should be good and helpful (citizens – donations – skills – friendly) for our community.

3 A/An (teenager – event – charity – playground) is a place which provides help to people who need.

4 Studying hard is (friendly – rewarding – healthy – sure) work.

5 (Community – Trips – Diet – Volunteering) gives you confidence and helps to socialize.

6 She is always the winner. She (receives – comes – donates – meets) first.

7 I was (sad – bored – surprised – tired) because they made me a birthday cake.

Listening script page 80 SB

هذا النص مأخوذ من كتاب دليل المعلم.

2. Listen, read, and role-play: استمع، اقرأ وتبادل الأدوار:



Presenter

Today we are talking about volunteering in the community. And here is a community volunteer leader, Rawan Ibrahim. Rawan, welcome! Can you tell us how you started volunteering?

نتحدث اليوم عن العمل التطوعى فى المجتمع ومعنا هنا قائد متطوع مجتمعى، روان ابراهيم. روان، مرحبًا! هل يمكنك أن تخبرينا كيف بدأتِ العمل التطوعى؟

Rawan



I first started volunteering when I was 13 at an after-school volunteer group. I began by helping the younger children with their reading and writing. I loved working with them, and I've volunteered ever since.

بدأت العمل التطوعى لأول مرة عندما كان عمرى ١٣ عامًا فى مجموعة تطوعية بعد المدرسة. بدأت بمساعدة الأطفال الصغار فى القراءة والكتابة. أحببت العمل معهم، وتطوعت منذ ذلك الحين.

Presenter



Since then, 16-year-old Rawan has participated in many school and community projects. Now she volunteers in the Summer Schools Activity Group every summer. In the group, Rawan helps out with the children's activities, like sports events and trips to parks and museums. She also organizes the volunteers for fundraising activities. Rawan, how do you find time to do all these things?

ومنذ ذلك الحين، شاركت روان البالغة من العمر ١٦ عامًا فى العديد من المشاريع المدرسية والمجتمعية. وهى الآن تتطوع فى مجموعة النشاط المدرسى الصيفى كل صيف. وفى المجموعة، تساعد روان فى أنشطة الأطفال، مثل الأحداث الرياضية والرحلات إلى المتنزهات والمتاحف. كما أنها تنظم المتطوعين لأنشطة جمع التبرعات. روان، كيف تجدين الوقت للقيام بكل هذه الأشياء؟

Rawan



It was hard at first, but I wrote a timetable to help me and then it was easy. And this year, I started volunteering with Food Box, a charity that delivers healthy meal boxes to families who need help. I became interested in Food Box because my mom volunteers there.

كان الأمر صعبًا فى البداية، لكننى كتبت جدولًا زمنيًا لمساعدتى، وبعد ذلك أصبح الأمر سهلًا. وهذا العام، بدأت العمل التطوعى مع «Food Box» ، وهى مؤسسة خيرية تقدم صناديق وجبات صحية للعائلات التى تحتاج إلى المساعدة. أصبحت مهتمة بـ «Food Box» لأن والدتى متطوعة هناك.



Presenter

That sounds like difficult but rewarding work.

يبدو هذا عملًا صعبًا ولكنه مجزٍ.

Rawan



Volunteering isn't like work. It's so much fun! At Food Box, I'm learning a lot about healthy food and what makes a healthy diet. I love delivering the food boxes and helping the children to be good citizens. Helping children makes me happy.

العمل التطوعى ليس مثل العمل. إنه ممتع للغاية! فى Food Box،، أنا أتعلم الكثير عن الطعام الصحى وما الذى يجعل النظام الغذائى صحيًا. أحب توصيل صناديق الطعام ومساعدة الأطفال على أن يكونوا مواطنين صالحين. مساعدة الأطفال تجعلنى أشعر بالسعادة.



Presenter

Thank you for sharing your experience with us? Do you have any advice for teenagers?

شكراً لكِ لمشاركة تجربتك معنا. هل لديكِ أى نصائح للمراهقين؟

Rawan



You learn many important life skills when you volunteer. You learn how to socialize and talk to people you wouldn't usually meet. Volunteering also gives you confidence. It's amazing to see how teenagers grow in confidence when they start volunteering. Fundraising helps charities get the money they need. It's good to give back to the place where you live. My advice to teenagers is "Volunteer and help if you can. You'll enjoy it!

تتعلم العديد من المهارات الحياتية المهمة عندما تتطوع. تتعلم كيف تكوّن علاقات اجتماعية وأن تتحدث إلى أشخاص لا تقابلهم عادةً. كما يمنحك التطوع الثقة. من المدهش أن ترى كيف ينمو المراهقون بثقة عندما يبدءون فى التطوع. يساعد جمع التبرعات الجمعيات الخيرية فى الحصول على الأموال التى تحتاجها. من الجيد أن ترد الجميل للمكان الذى تعيش فيه. نصيحتى للمراهقين هى «تطوع وساعد إذا استطعت. سوف تستمتع بذلك!

B Language Focus

Adverbs الأحوال

Adverbs are used to describe how actions happen or are done.

تُستخدم الأحوال لتصف كيف تحدث الأفعال.

e.g. He runs quickly.

Form: الشكل/ التكوين:

We can make adverbs by adding: يمكننا تكوين الأحوال بإضافة:

1. (-ly) لمعظم الصفات

e.g.
- quick سريع ⟶ quickly بسرعة
- quiet هادئ ⟶ quietly بهدوء
- patient صبور ⟶ patiently بصبر
- bad سيئ ⟶ badly بطريقة سيئة
- kind عطوف ⟶ kindly بعطف
- beautiful جميل ⟶ beautifully بطريقة جميلة

2. (ily) الصفات المنتهية ب (y + حرف ساكن)، يتم حذف ال (y) وأضافة

e.g.
- angry غاضب ⟶ angrily بغضب
- happy سعيد ⟶ happily بسعادة

3. (irregular) بعض الصفات لا تتبع القاعدة

e.g.
- fast سريع ⟶ fast بسرعة
- good جيد ⟶ well بطريقة جيدة
- hard جاد ⟶ hard بجد

Adverbs can come after the verb:

الظروف يمكن أن تأتى بعد الفعل:

Subject + verb + adverb

She danced beautifully.

رقصت بشكل جميل.



Adverbs can come before the verb:

الظروف يمكن أن تأتى قبل الفعل:

Subject + adverb + verb

He quietly talked to his friend.

تحدث بهدوء مع صديقه.



The adverbs can't come between the verb and its object.

لا يمكن للأحوال أن تأتى بين الفعل والمفعول به.

She quickly learned the rules. ✓

She learned the rules quickly. ✓

She learned quickly the rules. ✗

Check

Choose the correct answer:

1 He drove his car (fast – fastest – fasting – a fast).

2 They talked (angry – hungry – angrily – kind).

3 Yara waited (patient – quickly – patiently – hard) for her friends to come.

4 I studied (hard – kind – quiet – bad) for my exam.

5 He sang (beautiful – beauty – beautifully – beautify) at the party.

6 He painted his house (good – well – best – kind).

7 They were very (happily – quietly – happy – angrily).

8 She (quiet – patient – kind – quietly) sat in the library.

9 Adam was late, so he had to run (happy – angry – quiet – quickly).

10 The exams were very (well – hard – patient – beautiful).

11 She eats her (food hungrily – hungrily food – hungry food – food hungry).

12 Bassant cried (happy – loudly – heavy – hungry) because she lost her toy.

13 They volunteered (bad – quick – happily – happy) at the children's day center.

14 He was very hungry, and he ate his meal (patient – quickly – quick – quiet).

15 My dad talks to (patiently me – me patiently – patiently – patience).

Story

Two Brothers, Two Rewards شقيقان ، مكافأتان

3. Listen and say: استمع وقل:

Main vocabulary

reward	مكافأة	seed	بذرة
gold	ذهب	silver	فضة
jealous (adj.)	حقود	sparrow	عصفور

Extra vocabulary

village	قرية	rich (adj.)	غني	money	مال
broken (adj.)	مكسور	wing	جناح	little (adj.)	صغير (قليل)
strong (adj.)	قوي	thick (adj.)	سميك	alone	وحيدًا

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعـــال منتظمـة

Present		Past	Present		Past
care	يهتم	cared	reply	يرد	replied
reach	يصل	reached	disappear	يختفى	disappeared

Irregular verbs أفعـــال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
grow	ينمو	grew	cut	يقطع	cut
catch	يمسك	caught	break	يكسر	broke

Expressions and Phrases

The richest man ...	أغنى رجل ...	Don't worry, ...	لا تقلق، ...
look after = care for	يعتنى بـ ...	fly away	يطير بعيدًا
cut one open	قطع واحدة وفتحها	look for	يبحث عن
go back	يعود	school work	الواجب المدرسى
show respect	يُظهر الاحترام	look down	ينظر لأسفل

Definitions

jealous	feeling unhappy because someone has what you want الشعور بالتعاسة لأن شخصًا ما لديه ما تريد
reward	something you get for doing a good job or being helpful شيء تحصل عليه مقابل قيامك بعمل جيد أو تقديم المساعدة

4. Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:

The beginning

Once, there were two brothers who were very different. The older brother was the richest man in the village. He was rich, but he always wanted more money. The younger brother wasn't rich, but he was kind and shared what he had with his friends.

كان يا ما كان، كان هناك شقيقان مختلفان تمامًا. كان الأخ الأكبر هو أغنى رجل فى القرية. لقد كان غنيًّا، لكنه كان دائمًا يريد المزيد من المال. الأخ الأصغر لم يكن غنيًّا، لكنه كان طيبًا ويشارك ما لديه مع أصدقائه.

The middle

One day, the younger brother found a bird with a broken wing. "Don't worry, little bird," he said. "I will look after you." He cared for the bird all winter, and when the bird was strong again, he said, "You can fly away now." "First, I want to give you a reward," said the bird. "Plant this seed in your garden and look after it like you looked after me."
The brother planted the seed and watched it grow into a huge plant with big, orange vegetables. When the brother cut one open, it was full of gold and silver! He was now the richest man in the village!

يومًا ما، وجد الأخ الأصغر طائرًا جناحه مكسور. فقال: «لا تقلق أيها الطائر الصغير، «أنا سوف أعتنى بك». كان يعتنى بالطائر طوال فصل الشتاء، وعندما أصبح الطائر قويًّا مجددا، قال: «يمكنك أن تطير بعيدًا الآن». قال الطائر: «أولا، أريد أن أعطيك مكافأة، ازرع هذه البذرة فى حديقتك واعتنِ بها كما اعتنيت بى». زرع الأخ البذرة وشاهدها تنمو لتصبح نباتًا ضخمًا مع خضراوات برتقالية كبيرة. وعندما قطع الأخ واحدة، كانت مليئة بالذهب والفضة! الآن أصبح أغنى رجل فى القرية!

The older brother was jealous. He went to his brother's house, and his brother told him about the bird. The next day, the older brother caught a sparrow and broke its wing. He said, "I'll look after you, then you can give me a reward." He looked after the bird, and when it was strong, he said, "Now I want my reward." The little bird replied, "Here is your reward. Plant this seed and look after it well."

كان الأخ الأكبر غيورًا. فذهب إلى بيت أخيه فأخبره أخوه عن الطائر. فى اليوم التالى، أمسك الأخ الأكبر بعصفور وكسر جناحه. وقال: «سأعتنى بك، ثم يمكنك أن تعطينى مكافأة» . اعتنى بالطائر وعندما أصبح أقوى، قال «الآن أريد مكافأتى». فأجابه الطائر الصغير: «ها هى مكافأتك. ازرع هذه البذرة واعتنى بها جيدا».

The end

The older brother planted the seed, and soon a thick, tall plant grew up and up to the moon. The brother climbed up the plant to look for his reward. But when he reached the moon, the plant disappeared. He was alone, and he couldn't go back. The older brother didn't find any gold. So now, he looks down from the moon, and watches his kind, younger brother living happily and helping others.

زرع الأخ الأكبر البذرة، وسرعان ما نما نبات طويل و سميك ووصل إلى القمر. تسلق الأخ النبات ليبحث عن مكافأته. ولكن عندما وصل إلى القمر اختفى النبات. لقد كان وحيدًا، ولم يتمكن من العودة. ولم يجد الأخ الأكبر أى ذهب. والآن ينظر إلى الأسفل من القمر، ويشاهد أخاه الأصغر الطيب يعيش فى سعادة ويساعد الآخرين.

Check

1 What did the older brother always want?

2 What did the bird give the younger brother?

Pronunciation

5. Listen, point, and say: استمع، أشر، وقل:

The letters sh make the sound /ʃ/:


fish
سمكة


shoe
حذاء


ship
سفينة


wash
يغسل


cash
نقدى



shop
محل


sheep
خروف


dishes
أطباق


shirt
قميص


shells
صدف

The letters ch make the sound /tʃ/:


rich
غنى


chop
يقطع

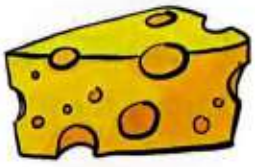

chip
رقاقة بطاطس


lunch
غداء


teacher
معلم


reach
يصل


chicken
دجاجة


cheese
جبن

The letters tch make the sound /tʃ/:


watch
يشاهد


catch
يلتقط


kitchen
مطبخ

Practice Lesson 3

• Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 To feel sure about your abilities means "……".
a) socialize b) confidence c) fundraising d) volunteering

2 "……" means collecting money for a charity.
a) Interview b) Rewarding c) Fundraising d) Community

3 The …… of the team should be wise and patient. أسيوط 2024
a) narrator b) leader c) scientist d) vet

4 I made a …… to help me organize my work.
a) charity b) timetable c) confidence d) fundraising

5 To "……" means to help others because you have received so much.
a) look after b) give back c) care for d) fly away

6 When you feel unhappy because someone has what you want, you are …… .
a) rich b) little c) rewarding d) jealous

7 A "……" is something you get for doing a good job or being helpful.
a) trip b) reward c) donation d) timetable

8 My dad likes to …… wood.
a) chop b) cook c) catch d) wash

9 Rawan always …… out with the children's activities.
a) eats b) helps c) cares d) collects

10 I like to ……and make friends at school. الدقهلية - إدارة دكرنس 2024
a) close b) collect c) spend d) socialize

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

skills – confidence – volunteering – charity

I'm Omar. I really like ……(1)…… . I learn many important ……(2)…… when I volunteer. I learn how to socialize and make friends with people who I wouldn't usually meet. Volunteering gives me ……(3)…… too. It is also good to give back to my community and help it get the money it needs.

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

الدقهلية - إدارة شربين التعليمية 2024

Last week, I read a story about two brothers who were very different. They had different styles. The older brother was jealous and loved money. He had a big farm and a lot of sheep. The younger brother was a very simple person. He loved helping others. Although the older brother was rich, he never helped his younger brother. One day, the younger brother found a bird with a broken wing. He cared for the bird all winter, and gave it food. The bird thanked him and gave him a big reward. He was so happy because he became the richest one in the village.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 The general idea of the text is about a

a) book b) movie c) tour d) story

2 The two brothers lived in a

a) town b) city c) sea d) village

B Answer the following questions:

3 What did the older brother have?

.....

4 What did the younger brother love?

.....

5 Who became the richest one at the end of the story?

.....

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1 look – my – after – I – brother – little. أسيوط - إدارة منفلوط 2024

.....

2 help – you – Volunteer – can – if – and.

.....

3 did – start – When – first – Hani – volunteering? الدقهلية - إدارة بلقاس 2024

.....

4 was – the village – man – He – the richest – in. أسيوط - إدارة ديروط 2024

.....

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1 I think if I study (hardly), I will pass the exam.

2 They waited (patient) for the bus.

3 Birds sing (beautiful). I love them. أسيوط - إدارة منفلوط 2024

4 Please, could you speak (quiet)? I have a headache.

5 He has a (beautifully) sound.

6 They were late, so they walked(quick).

7 They shouted (angry) at each other.

8 Adam can't play the piano. He plays(bad).

9 He plays football very (good). أسيوط 2024

6 Punctuate the following:

1 the older brother was jealous

2 how did you start volunteering



Lessons 4 & 5

Writing & Project

Watch a video

1. Listen and say: استمع وقل:

Main vocabulary

biography	سيرة ذاتية	youth	الشباب	preparatory school	مدرسة إعدادى
university	جامعة	charity event	حدث خيرى	social sciences	العلوم الاجتماعية
community worker	ناشط مجتمعى	fundraiser	جامع التبرعات	citizen	مواطن

Extra vocabulary

elder (adj.)	أكبر سنًّا	neighbor	جار	shopping	التسوق
volunteer event	حدث تطوعى	fundraising event	حدث جمع تبرعات	playground	ملعب
leader	قائد	successful (adj.)	ناجح	award	جائزة / مكافأة
timeline	خط زمنى	environment	البيئة	waste	مخلفات
boring (adj.)	ممل	surprised (adj.)	مندهش	children's charity	جمعية خيرية للأطفال

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعـــال منتظمـة

Present		Past	Present		Past
organize	ينظم	organized	raise	يجمع	raised
reduce	يقلل	reduced	respect	يحترم	respected

Irregular verbs أفعـــال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
lead	يقود	led	run	يدير	ran

Expressions and Phrases

participate in	يشارك فى	early life	مرحلة الطفولة	was born in	وُلد فى
raise money for	يجمع المال لـ	Youth Give Back	الشباب يرد الجميل	so successful that	ناجح جدًّا لدرجة أن
run a charity for	يدير جمعية خيرية لـ	date of birth	تاريخ الميلاد	do jobs for them	تقوم بالمهام من أجلهم

Important sentences جمل هامة

* Fareeda Hassan was born in Alexandria in 1994. ولدت فريدة حسن فى الإسكندرية فى 1994.
* She did a beach clean-up in 2006. قامت بتنظيف الشاطئ فى عام 2006.
* She went to university to study social sciences in 2012. التحقت بالجامعة لتدرس العلوم الاجتماعية في عام 2012.
* She led "Youth Give Back" project in 2020. قادت حركة «Youth Give Back» فى عام 2020.
* Today, she runs a charity for children. اليوم، تدير جمعية خيرية للأطفال.

Writing

2. Look and read: انظر واقرأ:

Fareeda Hassan: A Biography فريدة حسن: سيرة ذاتية

Early Life مرحلة الطفولة

Fareeda Hassan was born in Alexandria in 1994. As a child, Fareeda helped her mom buy her elder neighbors' shopping.

ولدت فريدة حسن فى الإسكندرية عام ١٩٩٤. عندما كانت طفلة، ساعدت فريدة والدتها فى شراء مشتريات جيرانها الأكبر سنًّا.

Volunteering at School التطوع فى المدرسة

Fareeda started preparatory school in 2006. Here she participated in her first volunteer event. She and a team of volunteers did a beach clean-up. In 2010, she organized her first charity event delivering food boxes to families in the community.

بدأت فريدة الدراسة الإعدادية فى عام ٢٠٠٦. وهنا شاركت فى أول حدث تطوعى لها. قامت هى وفريق من المتطوعين بتنظيف الشاطئ. فى عام ٢٠١٠، نظمت أول حدث خيرى لها لتوصيل صناديق الطعام للعائلات فى المجتمع.

The University Years سنوات الجامعة

In 2012, Fareeda went to university to study social sciences. Here she organized a fundraising event to raise money for a new playground.

فى عام ٢٠١٢، ذهبت فريدة إلى الجامعة لدراسة العلوم الاجتماعية. هنا قامت بتنظيم حدث لجمع التبرعات لجمع الأموال من أجل ملعب جديد.

Working in Charities العمل فى الجمعيات الخيرية

In 2017, Fareeda started her first job as a community volunteer leader in Cairo. Since then, she has helped many people. In 2020, she led a "Youth Give Back" project in six cities in Egypt. It was so successful that she won the "2020 Community Worker" award. Today, she runs a charity for children.

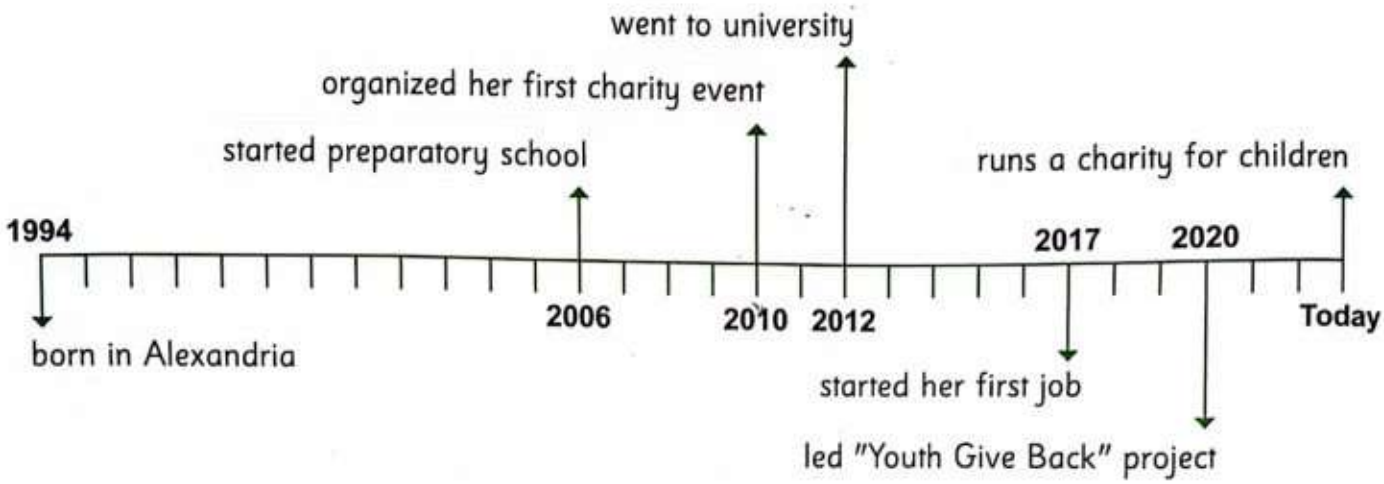
فى عام ٢٠١٧، بدأت فريدة وظيفتها الأولى كقائدة متطوعة مجتمعية فى القاهرة. ومنذ ذلك الحين، ساعدت الكثير من الناس. فى عام ٢٠٢٠، قادت مشروع «Youth Give Back» «الشباب يرد الجميل» فى ست مدن فى مصر. وقد حقق نجاحًا كبيرًا لدرجة أنها فازت بجائزة العامل المجتمعى لعام ٢٠٢٠. واليوم، تدير مؤسسة خيرية للأطفال.

How to write a biography

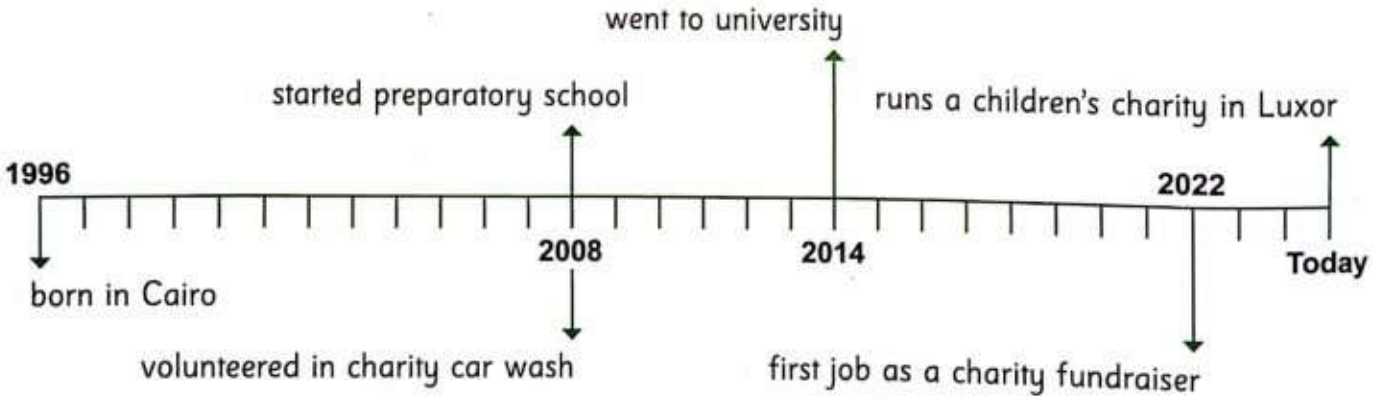
* Write the information in date order. اكتب المعلومات بالترتيب الزمنى.
* Include events with dates. اكتب الأحداث مع التواريخ.
* Divide the information into sections. قسّم المعلومات إلى أقسام.
* Add headings for each section. أضف عنوانًا لكل قسم.
* Write in the past tense. اكتب فى زمن الماضى البسيط.

Tip! When writing a biography, it helps to make a timeline of events, starting from the date of birth. Add important events and their dates to the timeline. This helps you organize the information in the correct order.

عند كتابة السيرة الذاتية، يساعدك وضع جدول زمنى للأحداث، بدءًا من تاريخ الميلاد. أضف الأحداث المهمة وتواريخها إلى الجدول الزمنى. وهذا يساعدك على تنظيم المعلومات بالترتيب الصحيح.



e.g. Plan a biography for Fares Shawky. Create a timeline in your book using the information below:



Fares Shawky: A biography

.....

.....

.....

.....

B Project

3. Look and read: انظر واقرأ:

Ways to Be a Good Citizen طرق لتكون مواطن صالح

There are lots of ways you can volunteer to help your community.

هناك الكثير من الطرق التى يمكنك من خلالها التطوع لمساعدة مجتمعك.



Respect Others: Be polite and kind to your neighbors. Help people who are old or sick. Call your neighbors to ask how you can help. You can offer to do their shopping or do jobs for them at home.

احترم الآخرين: كن مهذبًا ولطيفًا مع جيرانك. ساعد الأشخاص المسنين أو المرضى. اتصل بجيرانك واسألهم كيف يمكنك المساعدة. يمكنك عرض القيام بالتسوق أو القيام بالوظائف لهم فى المنزل.

Help the Community: Volunteer at a local charity event or help out on a community project. Volunteering isn't boring. It's interesting. You'll be surprised how much you enjoy it.

ساعد المجتمع: تطوع فى حدث محلى أو ساعد فى مشروع مجتمعى. العمل التطوعى ليس مملًّا. إنه شيِّق. سوف تتفاجأ بمدى استمتاعك به.



Protect the Environment: Reduce waste and help the environment. Don't use plastic bags or plastic bottles. If you have plastic bottles at home, recycle them. Let's all be good citizens and make the world a better place!

احْمِ البيئة: قلل النفايات وساعد البيئة. لا تستخدم الأكياس البلاستيكية. إذا كان لديك زجاجات بلاستيكية فى المنزل، أعد تدويرها. لنكن جميعًا مواطنين صالحين ونجعل العالم مكانًا أفضل!

Practice

Lessons 4 & 5

• Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 Fareeda Hassan was in Alexandria.
a) organized b) reduced c) called d) born

2 Fareeda organized a fundraising event to money for a new playground.
a) offer b) respect c) raise d) call

3 If you have plastic bottles at home, ... them.
a) protect b) raise b) recycle d) organize

4 Today, Fareeda a charity for children.
a) runs b) studies c) does d) goes

5 Young people should help people.
a) elder b) bad c) boring d) important

6 Fareeda was so that she won the "2020 Community Worker" award.
a) awful b) successful c) interesting d) polite

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

river – volunteer – neighbors – waste

You can do many things to be a good citizen. You can be polite and kind to your(1)..... . You can help old and sick people. You can(2)..... at local charities or help out on community projects. You can reduce(3)..... and help the environment. Don't use or throw plastic bags and bottles. You can clean the environment around you.

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

Fareeda Hassan was born in Alexandria in 1994. As a child, Fareeda helped her mom buy her elder neighbors' shopping. In 2006, she participated in her first volunteer event. She and a team of volunteers did a beach clean-up. In 2012, Fareeda went to university to study social sciences. Here she organized a fundraising event to raise money for a new playground. In 2020, she led a "Youth Give Back" project in six cities in Egypt. It was so successful that she won the "2020 Community Worker" award. Today, she runs a charity for children.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 Fareeda participated in her first volunteer event in
a) 1994 b) 2006 c) 2012 d) 2020

2 In 2012, Fareeda went to university to study
a) medicine b) computer c) social sciences d) English

B **Answer the following questions:**

3 Where was Fareeda born?

.....

4 Why did Fareeda organize a fundraising event?

.....

5 What project did Fareeda lead in 2020?

.....

4 **Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:**

1 Volunteering – is – boring, – interesting – isn't – it.

.....

2 are – Help – who – or – sick – people – old.

.....

3 waste – Reduce – help – and – environment – the.

.....

4 polite – to – Be – kind – your neighbors – and.

.....

5 **Punctuate the following:**

1 What award did fareeda win

.....

2 let's all be good citizens

.....

6 **Write a text of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements:**

مجاب عنه صفحة 266

"A biography of a famous community worker"

(Who is he/she? – Where was he/she born? – How did he/she help the community?)

.....

.....

.....

.....

Unit 11 REVIEW



يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من مراجعة أهم الأجزاء التى وردت بالوحدة.

Lesson (1)

donate	يتبرع	participate	يشارك
support	يدعم / يساند	volunteer	يتطوع
organization	مؤسسة	community	مجتمع
kindergarten class	حضانة / رياض الأطفال	paintings	رسومات
project	مشروع	idea	فكرة
vegetable garden	حديقة نباتية	fresh	طازج
popular	محبوب/ شائع	trash	قمامة
habitat	موطن / بيئة طبيعية	skills	مهارات
nervous	متوتر	stores	متاجر
neighbor	جار	own	خاص

Lesson (2)

nature camera	كاميرا لتصوير الطبيعة	grabber	لاقط / خطاف
multi-grip	مقبض متعدد الاستخدامات	games console	وحدة تحكم فى الألعاب
controller	جهاز التحكم	button	زر
joystick	عصا التحكم	essays	مقالات
exhibition	معرض فنى	gloves	قفازات
metal	معدنى	stick	عصا
fingers	أصابع	handle	مقبض/ يد
day center	مركز رعاية نهارى	jars	برطمانات
part	جزء	forest	غابة
app	تطبيق	character	شخصية
home button	زر القائمة الرئيسية	menu	قائمة
action button	زر الحركة	directions	اتجاهات

Lesson (3)

socialize	يكون علاقات اجتماعية	volunteering	التطوع
wing	جناح	fundraising	جمع التبرعات
charity	جمعية خيرية	donations	تبرعات
teenagers	مراهقون	confidence	الثقة
advice	نصيحة	friendly	ودود
volunteer	متطوع	leader	قائد
life skills	مهارات حياتية	citizens	مواطنون
experience	خبرة / تجربة	reward	مكافأة
gold	ذهب	sparrow	عصفور
jealous	حقود	silver	فضة

Lessons (4 & 5)

preparatory school	مدرسة إعدادى	volunteer event	حدث تطوعى
charity event	حدث خيرى	fundraising event	حدث جمع تبرعات
social sciences	العلوم الاجتماعية	community worker	ناشط مجتمعى
fundraiser	جامع التبرعات	playground	ملعب
award	جائزة/ مكافأة	waste	مخلفات
boring	ممل	surprised	مندهش
shopping	التسوق	youth	الشباب
biography	سيرة ذاتية	university	جامعة

Language Focus

1. We use "to + a verb in the base form" to explain why we do something.

to + (inf.) مصدر الفعل (الفعل بدون أى إضافات).

e.g. We wear gloves to protect our hands.

2. We also use "to + a verb in the base form" to answer questions with "Why".

e.g. A: Why do you use a grabber?
B: To pick up the trash.

3. Adverbs are used to describe how things happen or are done.

We can make adverbs by adding:

لمعظم الصفات (-ly)

e.g. quick → quickly
bad → badly
quiet → quietly

الصفات المنتهية بـ (y + حرف ساكن)، يتم حذف الـ (y) وإضافة (ily)

e.g. angry → angrily
happy → happily

بعض الصفات لا تتبع القاعدة (irregular)

e.g. fast → fast
hard → hard
good → well

Unit 11 CHECK YOUR VOCABULARY



تأكد من حفظك لكلمات الدروس قبل البدء فى إجابة اختبار الوحدة.

Lesson 1

أكثر أمانًا		رسومات		قمامة	
مشروع		بمفردها		متوتر	
مجتمع		مؤسسة		خاص	
فكرة		حديقة نباتية		جار	
موطن/ بيئة طبيعية		طازج		متاجر	
حضانة / رياض الأطفال		محبوب/ شائع		مهارات	

Lesson 2

يعصر		كاميرا لتصوير الطبيعة		معدنى	
لاقِط (خُطاف)		برطمانات		عصا	
جهاز التحكم		قفازات		مركز رعاية نهارى	
شخصية		مقبض متعدد الاستخدامات		وحدة تحكم الألعاب	
زر الحركة		غابة		عصا التحكم	
زر		زر القائمة الرئيسية		قائمة	

Lesson 3

مقابلة شخصية		فضة		مال	
التطوع		ذهب		المجتمع	
خبرة/ تجربة		سميك		جمع التبرعات	
جناح		سفينة		مكافأة	
جمعية خيرية		حقود		مُجزٍ	
يصل		مواطنون		مكسور	
وحيدًا		الثقة		غنى	

Lessons 4 & 5

سيرة ذاتية		جامع التبرعات	
أكبر سنًّا		حدث تطوعى	
مدرسة إعدادى		حدث خيرى	
جامعة		العلوم الإجتماعية	
مخلَّفات		حدث جمع تبرعات	
ناشط مجتمعى		مندهش	
البيئة		جمعية خيرية للأطفال	

WRITING TIME



تجميعة لأهم موضوعات الوحدة

لكى تتمكن من كتابة الموضوعات بشكل مميز، اتبع هذه الخطوات.

How to write about Community Help project:

Answer these questions:

1 Where did you start the project?
2 Why did you start it?
3 What were the ideas for the project?
4 What did some people choose to do?
5 What did you choose to do?

"Community Help"

At school, we started a Community Help project. We started it to support other people or things in our community. There were lots of ideas, like starting a vegetable garden at school or volunteering to clean trash from the river. Some people chose to clean up the trash so that animals' habitats are safer.
I chose to start an after-school club to teach children football skills.

How to write about tools we use to help the community:

1 When we + (مجال مساعدة المجتمع) + we use + (اسم الاداة).
2 It is + (وصف الاداة).
3 We use it to + (فيم تستخدم تلك الأداة).
4 (طريقة استخدام الأداة).

When we do a beach clean-up, we use the grabber. It's a long metal stick with two fingers at the end. We use it to pick up the trash. It's great fun to use. The fingers open and close when you squeeze the handle at the top. You open and close the fingers to pick up the trash, then you drop it in the bag.

How to write a biography:

- (اسم الشخص) + was born in + (اسم مكان وسنة الميلاد).
- He/She started school in + (سنة الدراسة).
- He/She first + (بداية أعماله المميزة).
- In + (تاريخ), + he/she + (أهم إنجازاته أو اختراعاته).
- Today, he/she + (المجال الذى يعمل به الآن).

"A biography"

Fareeda Hassan was born in Alexandria in 1994. She started preparatory school in 2006. She first participated in volunteer events in the same year when she and a team did a beach clean-up. In 2010, she organized her first charity event delivering food boxes to the community. In 2020, she won the "2020 Community Worker" award. Today, she runs a charity for children.

Unit 11 STUDENT'S BOOK CORNER

يتضمن هذا الجزء أهم الأسئلة التى وردت بكتاب الوزارة.

1 Match the words in the box to their meanings:

donate – participate – support – volunteer

1 to do things that help a particular person or group:

2 to take part in something:

3 to do a job or activity and not take any money for it:

4 to give something away to help a person or organization:

2 Put the words in order to make sentences:

1 Lama / put / painted / to / a picture / the exhibition. / in

.....

2 lemonade / to / the market. / in / They / sell / make

.....

3 by bus / her cousins. / see / Farah / to / traveled

.....

4 some candy / bought / the movie. / to / We / during / eat

.....

3 Use the adjectives in the box to make adverbs. Then complete the sentences:

angry – bad – good – fast – quiet

1 Younis hates playing tennis. He plays

2 Dalia came first in the running race. She runs really

3 Sherif opened the door because his little brother was sleeping.

4 Maged's picture of a horse is excellent. He draws very

5 I heard two people shouting in the street today.

Test Yourself 30

UNIT 11

Take a Test

Listening

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: 4

(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

1 Omar volunteers to help clean from the river.
a) fish b) ships c) trash d) boats

2 Lara helps out in the class.
a) kindergarten b) university c) English d) reading

3 Ali and his parents lots of toys and paintings.
a) support b) volunteer c) donate d) participate

4 Youssef and his friends started a garden.
a) tree b) flower c) fruit d) vegetable

Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: 1.5

1 They like to They spend time with people in a friendly way.
a) socialize b) confidence c) donate d) support

2 To "....." means to take part in something.
a) respect b) participate c) volunteer d) organize

3 We used the nature camera to how many animals and birds we see.
a) protect b) install c) record d) carry

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: 1.5

participated – socialize – skills – teenagers

Volunteering is very important and helpful to the community and to the people who volunteer. Volunteering can help(1)..... . They learn many important life(2)..... when they volunteer. Volunteering can teach them to(3)..... and make friends. Volunteering can give them confidence. When they volunteer to collect money for a charity, this helps the community. Volunteering is fun and teenagers can enjoy it.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

أسيوط - إدارة منفلوط التعليمية 2024 — 7

Volunteering is very important for helping the community. When you volunteer, you learn many important life skills. You learn how to socialize and talk to people you wouldn't usually meet. Volunteering also gives you confidence. It's amazing to see how teenagers grow in confidence when they start volunteering. Fundraising helps charities get the money they need. It's good to give back to the place where you live. My advice to teenagers is "Volunteer and help if you can." You will enjoy it.

A Choose the correct word from a, b, c, or d:

1 The general idea of the text is about "……".
a) animal habits b) coral reefs c) metal d) volunteering

2 The underlined word "Fundraising" means …… .
a) selling clothes b) buying food c) giving food d) collecting money

B Answer the following questions:

3 How can volunteering help teenagers? ……

4 What is the writer's advice to teenagers? ……

5 Summarize the text in one sentence. ……

Writing

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1 — 1

1 a – children – Fareeda Hassan – for – charity – runs. ……

2 help out – a community – on – We – project – should. …… الدقهلية - إدارة طلخا 2024

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

4

1 Nora learned how to play chess …… (good). أسيوط - إدارة منفلوط 2024

2 We use the controller to …… (plays) a computer game.

7 Punctuate the following:

4

1 why does your mom use a multi-grip …… أسيوط - إدارة منفلوط 2024

2 egypt is really an amazing country ……

8 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements:

مجاب عنه صفحة 286 — 7

"Helping my community"

volunteer – donate

……

……

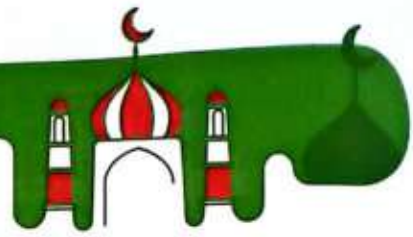
……

……

Assess your progress ★★★★★

< 50%	50 : 64%	65 : 84%	85 : 100%
Study again	Practice more	Solve more exams	Well done!

Unit 11 AL-AZHAR CORNER



1 Read and complete the dialogue:

grow – community – volunteer – Why – vegetables

Malek : do you want to volunteer?
Omar : I want to help my
Malek : Where are you going to volunteer?
Omar : I am going to in the vegetable garden.
Malek : What are you going to in the garden?
Omar : I am going to grow and fruit.

2 Read and circle the odd one out:

1 controller	support	games console	joystick	
2 bought	went	had	respect	
3 happy	good	angrily	bad	
4 joined	grew	cleaned	decided	
5 volunteer	fundraiser	worker	amazing	

3 Choose the correct answer:

1 To (volunteer – donate – support – participate) is to do a job without taking money for it.
2 I use a key (for – so – to – by) open the car.
3 Food Box is a (teaching – charity – tourism – farming) organization that helps people in Egypt.
4 Ola participates in fundraising events to (collects – collecting – collect – collected) money for people who need help.
5 (Socializing – Fundraising – Donating – Volunteering) is collecting money for a charity.
6 She uses a camera (to – and – so – for) take photos.
7 They have lots of money. They are (angry – poor – rich – annoying).
8 A: (When – What – When – How) does this button do? B: This turns on the computer.
9 To (participate – donate – volunteer – support) is to take part in something.
10 She plays the drums (angry – kind – quick – beautifully).

APRIL REVISION

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 I look my neighbor's pet when they go on a vacation.
a) at b) by c) for d) after

2 I like to and make friends at school.
a) close b) collect c) spend d) socialize

3 The games console had a that she used to play the game.
a) house b) controller c) board d) pen

4 We should respect people.
a) sad b) bad c) elder d) boring

5 If something is, it happens and it is true. الجيزة - إدارة الوراق التعليمية 2024
a) untrue b) scaring c) boring d) real

6 are well-known phrases that are generally true.
الجيزة - إدارة شمال الجيزة التعليمية 2024
a) Verbs b) Nouns c) Proverbs d) Actions

7 Don't count your before they hatch. الاسماعيلية - إدارة التوجية التعليمية 2024
a) cars b) camels c) chickens d) cats

8 is a way of traveling that doesn't damage the environment.
الجيزة - إدارة الهرم التعليمية 2024
a) Touring b) Eco-tourism c) Farming d) Tourist

9 When something is, it's perfect or excellent.
a) simple b) ideal c) stupid d) sustainable

10 A/An is the place where you can stay as a tourist.
a) playground b) station c) accommodation d) market

11 The environment where animals live is called animal's
a) proverbs b) accommodation c) habitat d) hotel

12 A person tries to do something, and does it.
a) sensible b) careful c) real d) successful

13 They look like each other. They look very
a) similar b) simple c) sensible d) successful

14 My Dad is very wise. All his thoughts and ideas are really
a) funny b) careful c) sensible d) stupid

15 I turned the radio to listen to songs.
a) at b) on c) for d) to

16 means collecting money for a charity.
a) Socialize b) Advice c) Fundraising d) Confidence

17 At Food box charity, you can learn a lot about food.

a) damaged b) bad c) unhealthy d) healthy

18 You are a good when you give back to the community where you live.

a) charity b) event c) citizen d) confidence

19 We food for poor people in Ramadan.

a) eat b) damage c) donate d) volunteer

20 If people learn more about the environment, they'll want to it.

a) trade b) protect c) damage d) feel

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

dive – snorkeling – historical – damage

Egypt is an amazing country. There are many(1)..... places to visit in Egypt. People can go(2)..... in the Red Sea, go on a desert safari, climb mountains, or sail on the Nile. So tourism is important - but eco-tourism is becoming very popular, too. Eco-tourism is a way of traveling that doesn't(3)..... the environment. It's more sustainable than traditional tourism.

children – donated – support – differences

My friends and I started a project called Community Help. We had to choose something we could do to(1)..... other people in the community. We thought it would be nice to do something for(2)..... who are sick. We painted big pictures of flowers, animals, and beaches. Our parents(3)..... lots of toys, too. We took them to the hospital to make the rooms look nicer.

northern – hotter – migrate – hills

Many birds migrate to and from Egypt, and across it, because of where it is in the world. North Africa is(1)..... than Europe. So in winter, many birds leave(2)..... European countries and fly to Egypt and other warmer places. This means that lots of interesting birds(3)..... to Egypt, such as eagles, falcons, and swifts. You can often see large flocks of birds such as pelicans near water, along the Red Sea and Mediterranean coasts.

donated – younger – kind – shopping

Mona is my neighbor. She was so(1)..... to us. She helped my mom look after me when I was(2)..... . Now that she's older, it's difficult for her to go(3)..... . So, my mom and I ask her what she needs. Then, we go to the store to help her out. I love helping her because she helped us in the past.

3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1 Friday – We – swim – every. القاهرة - إدارة السلام التعليمية 2024

.....

2 environment – the – Eco tourists – look – after. القاهرة - إدارة المرج التعليمية 2024

.....

3 last – sick – My – month – sister – was.

.....

4 birds – long – very – Some – distances – fly. الفيوم - إدارة غرب التعليمية 2024

.....

5 getting – older – She's – a bit.

.....

6 wanted to – children – in – help – school – I – my.

.....

7 volunteer at – a – for – people – day center – old – I.

.....

8 mustn't – You – jackets – wear – summer – in the.

.....

9 must – look – We – after – habitats – animal's.

.....

10 I – water – because – drank – I was – thirsty.

.....

4 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) in the brackets:

1 If she finishes early, she (goes) back soon.

2 You must (been) careful when you cross the road. محافظة القاهرة - إدارة المرج التعليمية 2024

3 You (mustn't) respect nature. محافظة الجيزة - إدارة الدقي التعليمية 2024

4 Mona runs (quick). She can win the race.

5 I went to the club to (playing) football.

6 If she (went) to bed early, she will get up early.

7 Dalia came first in the swimming race. She swam (fastly).

8 What (would) you do if you get hungry?

9 You mustn't (hurting) animals.

10 I felt tired, ... (because) I went home.

11 He doesn't play tennis (happy).

12 A: (How) did you open the fridge? B: To get some juice.

13 He reads very (quick). I can't understand. محافظة الجيزة - إدارة العمرانية التعليمية 2024

14 We must take our umbrella (and) it's raining now.

15 You (must) throw trash in the river.

16 The city is very beautiful, ... (so) it's polluted.

17 You must (following) the school rules. محافظة الشرقية - إدارة أبو حماد التعليمية 2024

18 She uses her laptop to (doing) her homework. محافظة القاهرة - إدارة المرج التعليمية 2024

19 If she (felt) thirsty, she will drink water. محافظة الشرقية - إدارة الصالحية الجديدة التعليمية 2024

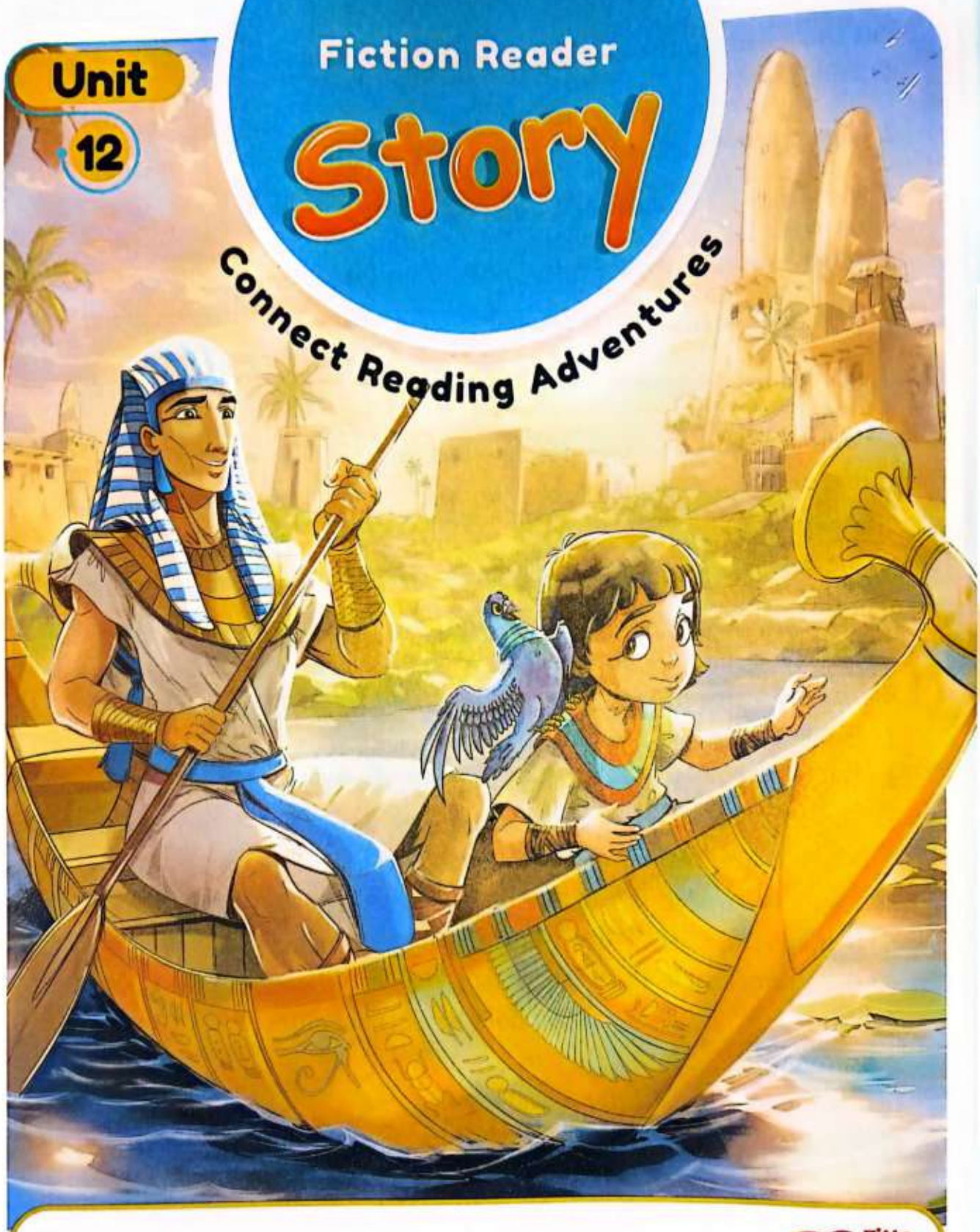
20 If he (was) hungry, he will have a snack. محافظة الجيزة - إدارة 6 أكتوبر التعليمية 2024

Unit 12

Fiction Reader

Story

Connect Reading Adventures



Title
العنوان

Atemu and Amethyst

أتيمو والحمامة الزاجلة (أماثيست)

Told by Jenny Farmer
Author
المؤلف

Illustrated by Matt Ward
Illustrator
الرسام

Story

Atemu and Amethyst

A Main Vocabulary

1. Listen, point, and say: استمع، أشر وقل:



amethyst
الجَمَشْت/الأمانيست
(حجر كريم)



carpenter
نجار



coo
هديل
(الصوت الذى يصدره الحمام)



dome
قبة



jewelry
مجوهرات



order
طلب (طلب تجارى)



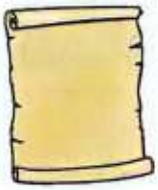
carrier pigeon
الحمام الزاجل



yard
فناء



wooden box
صندوق خشبى



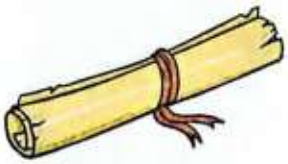
papyrus
ورق بردى



grain
حبوب



flock
سرب



message
رسالة



scribe
كاتب



dovecotes
أبراج حمام

Extra vocabulary

Nile Delta	الدلتا	huge (adj.)	ضخم	nearby	مجاور
fill (v.)	يملأ	bowl	وعاء	thousands	الآلاف
light gray	رمادى فاتح	shiny (adj.)	لامع/براق	throw (v.)	يلقى
chest	صدر	call (v.)	ينادى على	hungrily	بجوع
suddenly	فجأة	notice (v.)	يلاحظ	beak	منقار
dark gray	رمادى غامق	stripes	خطوط	follow (v.)	يتبع
hurt (adj.)/(v.)	مُصاب/ يُصاب	object	شىء	a piece of	قطعة من
inside	داخلى/ بالداخل	attach (v.)	يُلحق بـ	trip	رحلة قصيرة
holes	فتحات	special (adj.)	خاص/ مميز	large (adj.)	كبير/ واسع
customer	عميل/ زبون	soon	قريبًا	exactly	بالظبط
cute (adj.)	لطيف (جذاب)	softly	برقة/ بنعومة	letter	رسالة/ خطاب

Expressions and Phrases

once upon a time	كان يا ما كان	along, long time ago	فى قديم الزمان
(someone) called ...	شخص ما يُدعى (يُسمى)	look up	ينظر لأعلى
one day	يومًا ما	come out	يخرج
come down	ينزل للأسفل	couldn't believe his eyes	لم يستطع تصديق عينيه (تعبير للدهشة)
get to the fields	يصل إلى الحقول	fly away	يطير بعيدًا
come in	يدخل	What's wrong ...?	ما المشكلة؟
pick up	يلتقط	poor	مسكين (تعبير لشخص أصابه مكروه)
quiet sound	صوت هادئ	That's very clever!	هذه طريقة ذكية جدًّا!
It was very important for	إنه مهم جدًّا من أجل	three days later	بعد مرور ثلاثة أيام
For the next week	من أجل الأسبوع القادم	capital city	العاصمة
much better	أحسن بكثير	the last day	اليوم الأخير
at one side	على جانب واحد	Come with me then	تعال معى إذًا
on the boat	على متن قارب	It's time to go	حان وقت الذهاب
Oh wow!	أووه واااو ! (تعبير للفرحة)	Good idea!	فكرة رائعة!

B Story Elements

2. Read and notice: اقرأ ولاحظ:

Characters الشخصيات

Main characters
الشخصيات الرئيسية



Atemu
أتيمو



Nedjem
نجم



Atemu's father
والد أتيمو



Atemu's mother
والدة أتيمو



Mr Akhon
(The merchant)
السيد أخون (التاجر)



Nedjem's cat
قطة نجم



Amethyst
أمانيست

Setting
المكان



Atemu's house
منزل أتيمو



fields of the village
حقول القرية



Atemu's house yard
فناء منزل أتيمو



on a boat in the Nile
على متن قارب فى النيل



Mr Akhon's house
منزل السيد آخون



Amethyst's old house
منزل أمانيست القديم

Plot
الحبكة



The Beginning

Atemu found a huge flock of birds in the fields of the village. He noticed a different bird among the other birds. Its wing was hurt. There was something on its leg.

وجد أتيمو سربًا ضخمًا من الطيور فى حقول القرية. لاحظ وجود طائر مختلف بين الطيور الأخرى. كان جناحه مصابًا. كان هناك شىء ما على ساقه.



The Middle

Atemu and his father found a wooden box tied to the bird's leg. There was a message inside. They knew it was a carrier pigeon. They knew the message was for a merchant in the city. They wanted to take the bird and the message back to him.

وجد أتيمو ووالده صندوقًا خشبيًا مربوطًا فى ساق الطائر. كان يوجد رسالة بداخلها. كان نوعًا من الحمام الزاجل. عرفوا أن الرسالة تخص تاجرًا فى المدينة. أرادوا أن يعيدوا الطائر والرسالة إلى التاجر.



The End

The merchant met Atemu and his father. He thanked them and showed them Amethyst's house. Atemu was sad to leave the bird. The merchant let Amethyst stay with Atemu. Atemu was happy.

قابل التاجر أتيمو ووالده. شكرهم التاجر وأخذهم ليروا منزل الطائر أمانيست. كان أتيمو حزينًا لأنه سيترك الطائر. سمح التاجر ببقاء أمانيست عند أتيمو. كان أتيمو سعيدًا.

Moral!
When somebody helps you, you should help them if you can.

عندما يساعدك شخص ما، يجب أن تساعده حين تستطيع ذلك.

Story

3. Listen, read, and role-play: استمع، اقرأ وتبادل الأدوار:

The Beginning



Once upon a time, a long, long, time ago, a boy called Atemu lived in the Nile Delta. His home was in a small village, and he lived with his parents and his big sister, Nedjem. Atemu was twelve, but he didn't go to school. His father worked as a carpenter. He was teaching Atemu how to make things from wood.

Atemu loved animals, especially birds. He liked to watch the birds that came into his yard. Every day, Atemu gave some grain to the birds. He enjoyed watching them eat. Often, his sister's cat came into the yard and watched the birds, too. It sometimes jumped at the birds, but it never caught them. It was a very slow cat.

كان يا ما كان، فى قديم الزمان كان هناك ولد يُدعى أتيمو عاش بالقرب من دلتا النيل. منزله كان فى قرية صغيرة وعاش مع والديه وأخته الكبيرة نجم. كان عمر أتيمو اثنى عشر عامًا ولكن لم يكن يذهب إلى المدرسة. عمل والده نجارًا. كان يُعلم أتيمو كيفية صنع أشياء من الخشب. أحب أتيمو الحيوانات، الطيور بشكل خاص. كان يحب مراقبة الطيور التى تدخل إلى فناء منزله. كان أتيمو يعطى الطيور بعض الحبوب كل يوم. كان يستمتع بمشاهدتها وهى تأكل. فى كثير من الأحيان تأتى قطة أخته إلى الفناء وتراقب الطيور أيضًا. أحيانًا تقفز على الطيور ولكن لم تستطع أبدًا الإمساك بها. لقد كانت قطة بطيئة جدًا.



One day in October, Atemu was in the yard when he heard a strange noise. He looked up and saw something amazing. A huge flock of birds were flying over his village. They were coming down to a field nearby.

"Mom! Mom!" shouted Atemu. "There are so many birds! Can I go and see them?" His Mom came out of the house and looked. "Wow!" she said. "Yes, you can go." She filled a bowl with grain. "Here, you are," she said kindly. "You can take this for them."

يومًا ما فى أكتوبر، بينما كان أتيمو فى الفناء سمع صوت ضوضاء غريبة. نظر لأعلى ورأى شيئًا مذهلًا. كان سرب ضخم من الطيور يطير فوق القرية وهبطوا فى حقل بالجوار. صاح أتيمو «أمى! أمى!» «هناك العديد من الطيور . هل يمكننى الذهاب لرؤيتها؟» خرجت أمه من المنزل ونظرت وقالت «واااو! نعم ، يمكنك الذهاب». قامت بملء وعاء بالحبوب وقالت بعطف «تفضل،خذ هذا لهم».



When Atemu got to the fields, he couldn't believe his eyes. There were thousands of birds. Every one of them was light gray, with shiny green feathers on its neck and purple feathers on its chest. They were beautiful! They called to each other with a long "whoo" sounds.

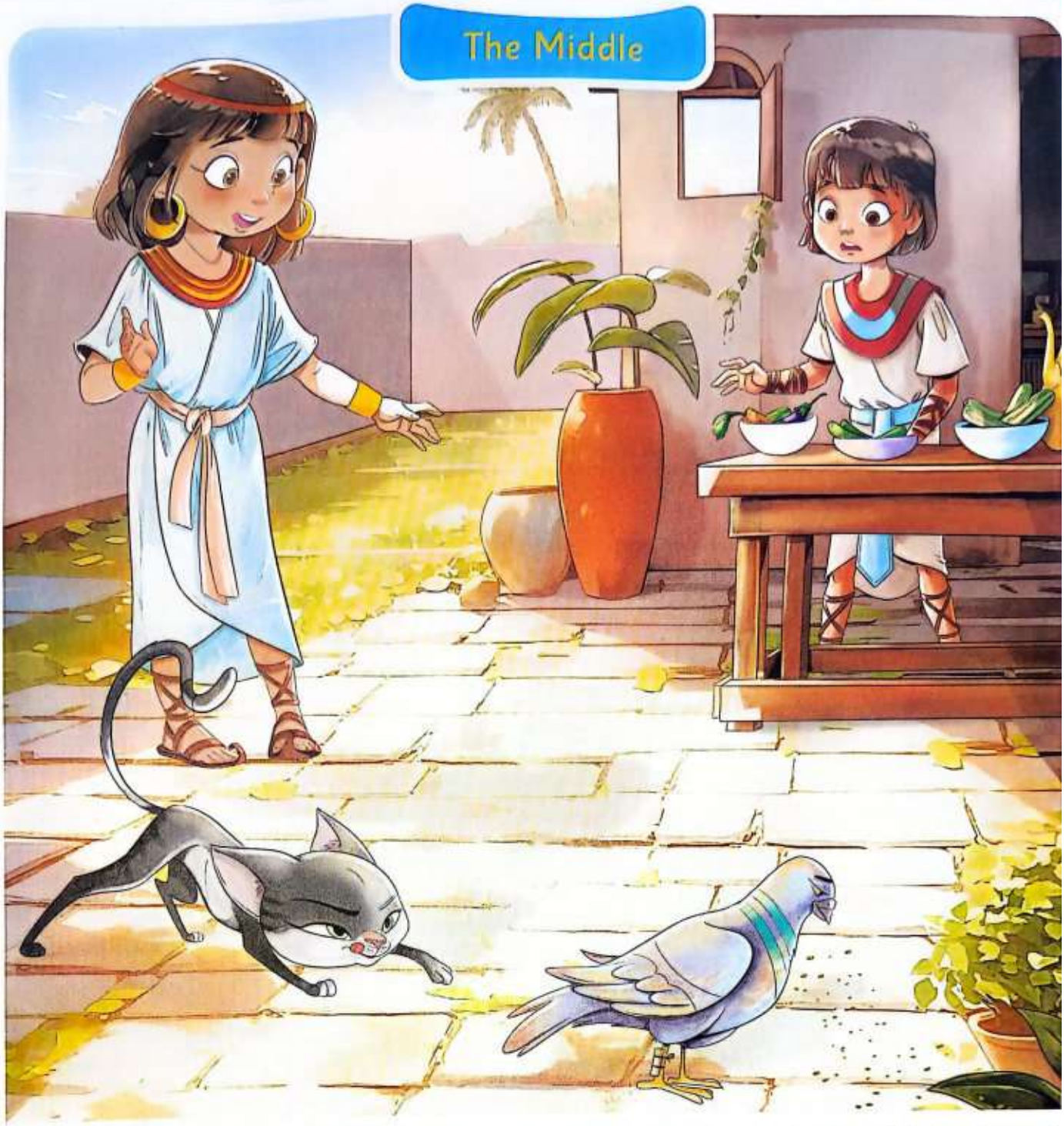
Atemu threw the grain to the birds. They ate it hungrily. Then, suddenly, they flew into the sky again. Atemu watched them go.

عندما وصل أتيمو للحقول، لم يستطع تصديق عينيه. كان يوجد الآلاف من الطيور. كانت الطيور جميعها لونها رمادى فاتح و يوجد ريش أخضر لامع على رقابهم وريش بنفسجى على صدرهم . بدت بشكل جميل للغاية. كانت تنادى بعضها بأصوات مميزة طويلة «وووووه» طويلة. ألقى أتيمو الحبوب إلى الطيور. فأكلتها بجوع . ثم فجأة طارت إلى السماء مرة أخرى. راقبها أتيمو وهى تغادر.



Then he noticed a bird at his feet. It was looking at him. "Coo, coo, coo, coo," it went. "I don't have any grain for you, bird," said Atemu. "Coo, coo, coo, coo," went the bird. The noise was different from the other birds. It looked different too. First, it was bigger. The other birds had yellow beaks, but this bird's beak was dark gray. This bird also had stripes on its wings. Atemu could see something strange on its leg, too. Just then, Atemu heard his mother calling him. Atemu started walking quickly, but he could hear the bird behind him. It was following him! "Why don't you fly with your friends?" said Atemu, but the bird just cooed.

ثم لاحظ طائرًا بجوار قدميه. كان ينظر إلى أتيمو و يردد بعض الأصوات (كوو، كوو، كوو). قال أتيمو: «لا يوجد لدى أى حبوب لك يا طائر». بدأ الطائر فى إصدار بعض الأصوات مجددًا. كانت الضوضاء التى يصدرها مختلفة عن باقى الطيور. كان شكله مختلفًا أيضًا. أولًا: كان حجمه أكبر منها كان للطيور الأخرى منقار أصفر لكن منقاره هو كان رماديًا غامقًا. كان أيضًا يوجد بعض الخطوط على أجنحته. استطاع أتيمو أن يرى شيئًا ما غريبًا على ساقه أيضًا. ثم سمع أتيمو أمه تنادى عليه. سار أتيمو مسرعًا، لكنه استطاع أن يسمع الطائر يسير خلفه. كان يتبعه! قال أتيمو: «لماذا لا تطير مع أصدقائك؟» لكن ظل الطائر يصدر صوتًا.



When Atemu got to his yard, the bird came in after him. He watched it while he cleaned vegetables for dinner. Then he saw Nedjem's cat. It was watching the bird, too. Suddenly, the cat jumped on the bird! But the bird didn't fly away. Nedjem ran and picked up the cat. "You should catch rats and snakes, not birds!" she said.

"What's wrong with that bird? It can't fly," said their mother. "Is it hurt?"

"Maybe!" said Atemu. "It didn't fly with the other birds." Atemu walked to the bird. When he touched its left wing, it made a quiet sound. "I think its wing is hurt," said Atemu.

عندما وصل أتيمو إلى الفناء، دخل الطائر وراءه. قام أتيمو بمراقبته بينما كان يقوم بتنظيف بعض الخضراوات للعشاء. ثم رأى قط أخته نجم حيث كان يراقب الطائر أيضًا. فجأة قفز القط على الطائر لكن لم يطِر الطائر بعيدًا. جرت نجم وأمسكت بالقط وقالت: «يجب عليك الإمساك بالفئران والثعابين ليس الطيور». قالت الأم: «ما مشكلة هذا الطائر؟ لا يستطيع أن يطير. هل هو مُصاب؟» قال أتيمو: «ربما! لم يطِر مع باقي الطيور.» اقترب أتيمو من الطائر. عندما لمس جناحه الأيسر، أصدر صوتًا هادئًا. قال أتيمو: «أعتقد أن جناحه مُصاب».



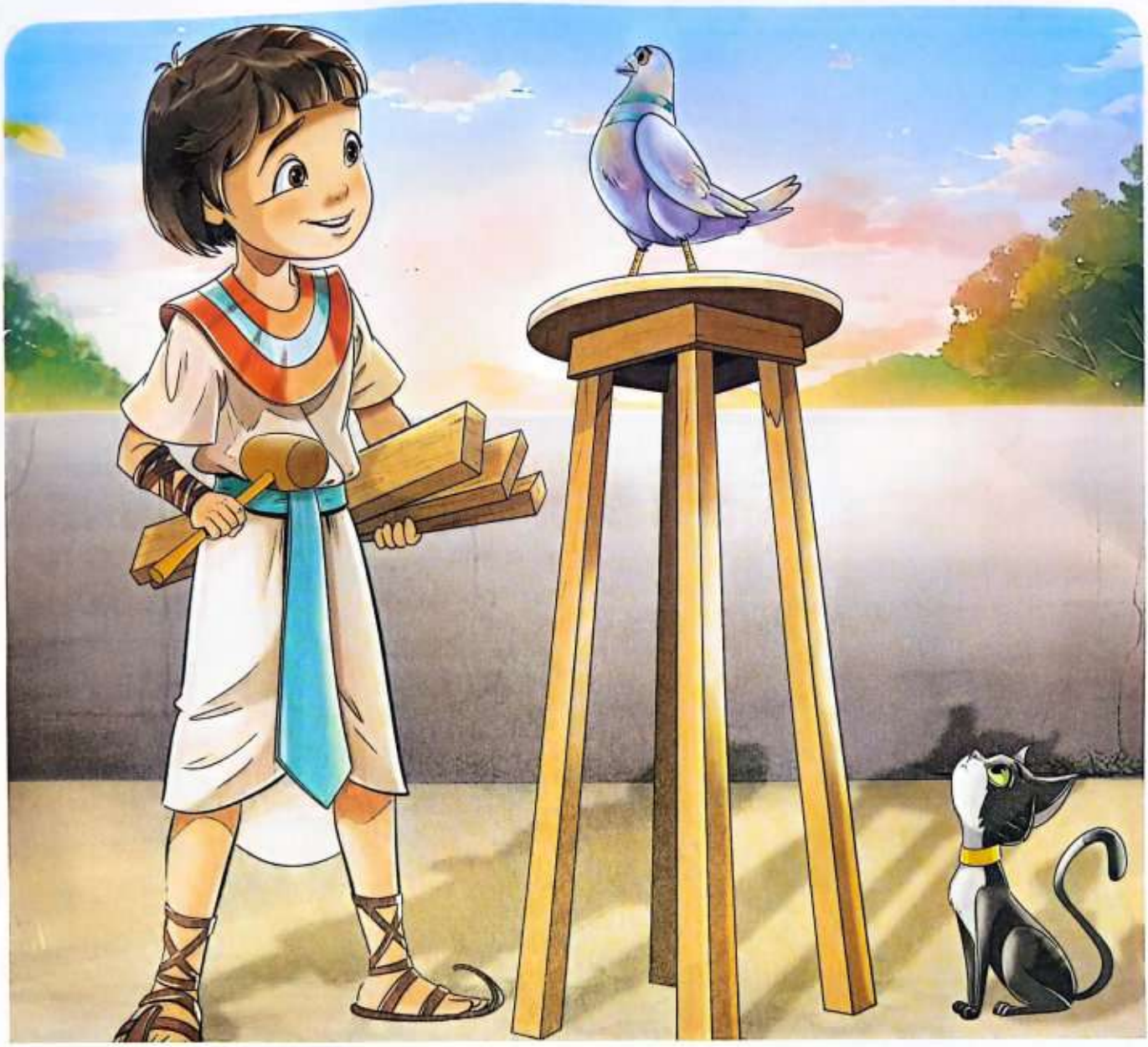
When Atemu's father came home, Atemu showed him the bird. "It has a hurt wing, and there is something on its leg." "Poor bird!" said his father. "What is that?" He took the object from the bird's leg. It was a very small wooden box. Atemu's father opened it. A piece of papyrus paper was inside.
"It's a message!" said Atemu's father. "This bird is a carrier pigeon."
"What's a carrier pigeon?" asked Atemu.

عندما عاد والد أتيمو إلى المنزل ،عرض عليه أتيمو حالة الطائر قائلًا: «لديه جناح مُصاب ويوجد شيء ما على ساقه». قال الأب: « يالـه من طائر مسكين!» ثم قال: «ما هذا؟» أخذ الشيء الموجود على ساق الطائر. كان صندوقًا خشبيًا صغيرًا جدًا . قام والد أتيمو بفتحه، كان يوجد ورقة بردى بالداخل. قال والد أتيمو «إنها رسالة، هذا الطائر من الحمام الزاجل». سأل أتيمو: «ما هو الحمام الزاجل؟»



"It's a bird which carries messages," said his father. "Important people in the city keep pigeons. The pigeons learn where they live. Then people take the pigeons to new places. When there is news from that place, they attach the message to the pigeon. It flies home and carries the message. That's why they're called carrier pigeons."
"That's very clever!" said Atemu. "So, what does this message say?" "I don't know," said his father. "I'll take it to my friend, the scribe."

قال الأب: «إنه طائر يحمل رسائل، الناس المهمون في المدينة يقومون بتربية الحمام، الحمام يعلم مكان معيشتهم، ثم يأخذهم الناس إلى أماكن جديدة. عندما يكون هناك أخبار من تلك الأماكن، يقوم الناس بوضع رسالة ملحقة بساق الحمامة لتطير عائدة إلى المكان حاملة معها الرسالة. لذلك يسمون بالحمام الزاجل». قال أتيمو: «هذه طريقة ذكية جدًا. ماذا تقول هذه الرسالة إذًا؟» قال الأب: «لا أعلم، سآخذها إلى صديقي الكاتب».



Atemu looked after the pigeon. He made it a high table which the cat couldn't jump onto. He gave it water and grain and talked to it. The pigeon cooed back happily. Atemu's father went to the city. Three days later he came home.

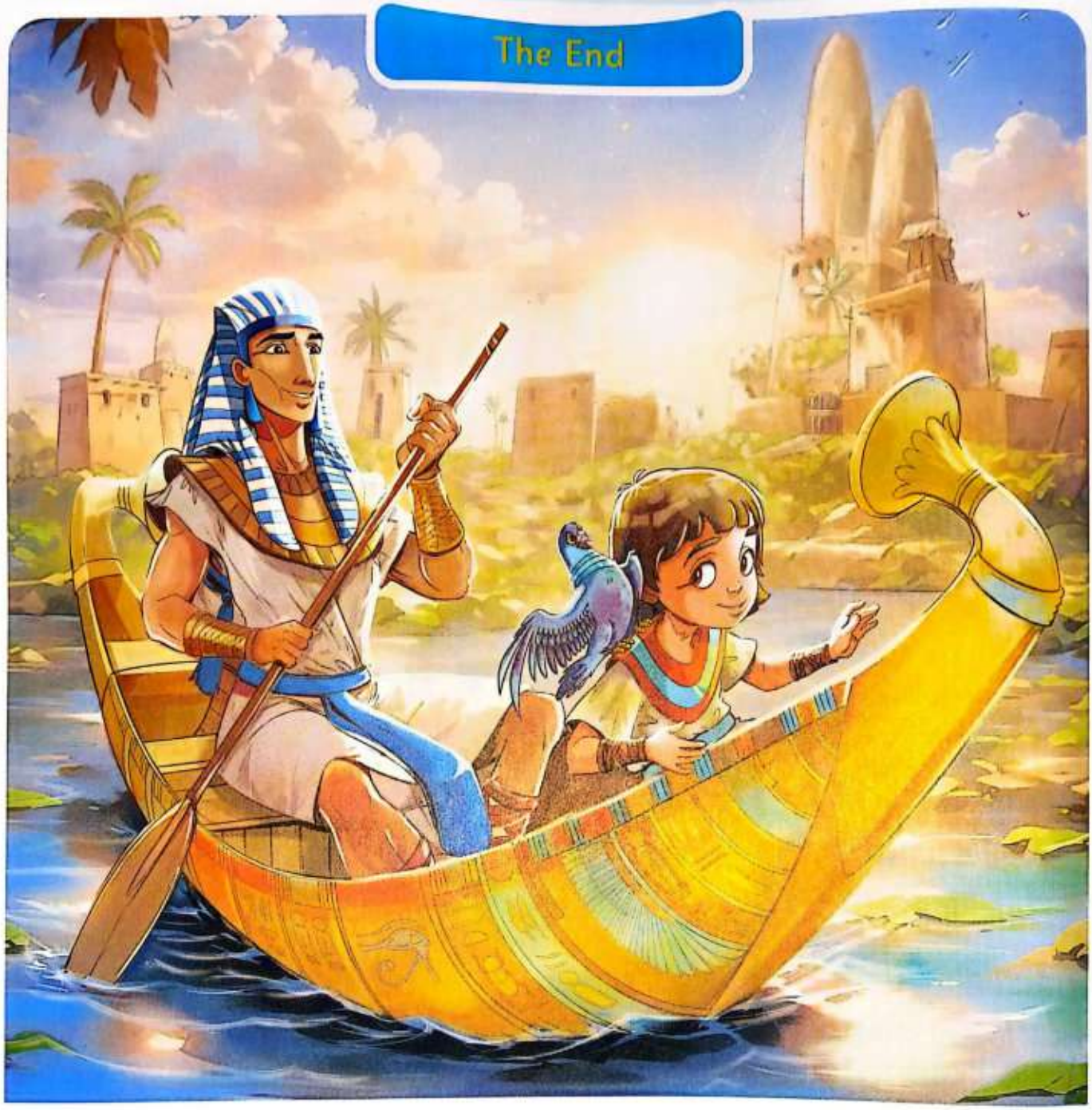
"Did you speak to the scribe?" said Atemu.

"Yes," said his father. "The message was for a jewelry merchant in the city, Mr Akhon. I took him the message, and he was very happy! It was an order for a lot of gold jewelry from the capital city. It was very important for him." "Mr Akhon also wants his pigeon. We'll take it to him next week."

"Yes, father," Atemu said quietly. For the next week, Atemu looked after the pigeon. The pigeon started to fly again. Every morning, it flew to the roof where Atemu slept and cooed to him. Atemu was very happy to have a new pigeon friend. "I don't want you to go home," he said to it quietly.

اعتنى أتيمو بالحمامة. صنع لها طاولة عالية بحيث لا يستطيع القط الوصول لها والقفز عليها. أعطاها المياه والحبوب وتكلم معها. وأصدرت الحمامة صوتًا يدل على الفرحة. ذهب والد أتيمو إلى المدينة وبعد ثلاثة أيام عاد إلى المنزل. قال أتيمو: «هل تحدثت مع الكاتب؟» قال الأب: «نعم ، الرسالة تخص تاجر مجوهرات يُدعى السيد آخون فى المدينة. عندما أخذت له الرسالة كان سعيدًا للغاية. كانت رسالة طلب كمية كبيرة من مجوهرات الذهب من العاصمة. كانت مهمة جدًا له» .«يريد السيد آخون أيضًا حمامته. سنأخذها له الأسبوع القادم». قال أتيمو بهدوء: «حسنًا يا أبى». اعتنى أتيمو بالحمامة. بدأت الحمامة تطير مجددًا . تطير كل صباح إلى السطح حيث ينام أتيمو وتظل تردد أصواتًا له. كان أتيمو سعيدًا للغاية لأنه أصبح لديه صديق جديد. قال لها بصوت منخفض: «لا أريدك أن تذهبى إلى البيت».

The End



The next Sunday, Atemu and his father got into their boat to go to the city. The pigeon sat on Atemu's shoulder. Atemu was excited because it was his first trip to the city, but he was also sad. It was his last day with the pigeon. But he forgot about that when he saw the houses of the city. There were so many and some of the houses were very big! Some houses had white domes with many small holes in the yard or on the roof.

"What are they?" asked Atemu. "Those are dovecotes." said Atemu's father. "Dovecotes are special houses for pigeons."

الأحد التالى، أخذ أتيمو ووالده القارب ليذهبا إلى المدينة. جلست الحمامة على كتف أتيمو. كان أتيمو متحمسًا لأنها كانت رحلته الأولى إلى المدينة ولكنه كان أيضًا حزينًا لأنه آخر يوم سيقضيه مع الحمامة. لكنه نسى ذلك عندما رأى منازل المدينة. كان يوجد العديد منها وبعض منهم كان حجمه كبيرًا جدًا. بعض المنازل لها قباب بيضاء ويوجد بها فتحات صغيرة. وكانت توجد فى الفناء أو على سطح المنزل. سأل أتيمو: «ما هذه؟». قال والد أتيمو: «إنها أبراج حمام». «أبراج الحمام هى منازل خاصة للحمام».



Finally, they arrived at a large house. "We're here!" Atemu's father said. A smiling man came to meet them. He was wearing a lot of jewelry. Atemu knew it was the merchant.
"Welcome to my home!" Mr Akhon said. "Thank you so much for finding my message. It was from my most important customer. And thanks for looking after my pigeon. Her name is Amethyst – because her feathers are the same color as these purple stones. She is my best bird!" "She was hurt," said Atemu. "I see," said the merchant. Can she fly now?"
"Yes," said Atemu. "She's much better." "Come with me then. I'll show you where she lives."

أخيرًا، وصلا إلى منزل كبير . قال والد أتيمو: «ها نحن قد وصلنا». جاء رجل مبتسم ليقابلنا. كان يرتدى الكثير من المجوهرات. عرف أتيمو أنه هو التاجر. قال السيد آخون: «مرحبًا بكم فى منزلى، شكرًا لكم لأنكم وجدتم رسالتى، كانت الرسالة من أهم زبائنى وشكرًا لاعتنائكم بحمامتى. اسمها «أمانيست» لأن ريشها بنفس لون هذه الأحجار البنفسجية، إنها طائرى المفضل». قال أتيمو: «كانت مُصابة». قال التاجر: «أرى ذلك. هل تستطيع أن تطير الآن؟» قال أتيمو: «نعم ، إنها أفضل بكثير الآن». قال التاجر: «تعالوا معى إذًا. سأريكم أين تعيش».



Atemu and his father followed Mr Akhon into his yard. At one side, there were three tall dovecotes. "My birds will come home soon." the merchant said. "How many do you have?" said Atemu. "Oh, a lot." said Mr Akhon. "They have a lot of babies, so I don't know exactly." Atemu looked into a dovecote. He could see some baby birds. "They're so cute!" Atemu said. "It's time to go, son," said Atemu's father. "Say goodbye to the bird."

اتبع أتيمو ووالده السيد آخون إلى فناء منزله. على أحد الجوانب، كان يوجد ثلاثة أبراج حمام طويلة. قال التاجر: «ستأتي طيوري إلى منازلها قريبًا». قال أتيمو: «كم عدد الطيور التي تمتلكها؟» قال السيد آخون «أووه. لدي الكثير، لديهم العديد من الصغار، لذلك لا أعرف عددها بالظبط». نظر أتيمو داخل برج حمام. استطاع أن يرى بعضًا من صغار الطيور. قال أتيمو: «إنها لطيفة للغاية». قال والد أتيمو: «حان وقت الذهاب يا بني. ودع الطائر».



"Goodbye Amethyst," said Atemu, softly. He touched her purple feathers, and she cooed. He was very sad, but he tried to smile. The merchant was a kind man. He spoke to Atemu. "You say Amethyst got well again, but she didn't fly home." "Yes" said Atemu. "Well, I think she'll be happy to stay with you now."

قال أتيمو برقة: «وداعًا يا أمانيست». قام بلمس ريشها البنفسجي وقامت هي بإصدار صوت . كان أتيمو حزينًا ولكنه حاول أن يبتسم. كان التاجر رجلًا طيبًا. تحدث إلى أتيمو قائلًا : «أنت تقول إن أمانيست تحسنت ، ولكنها لم تعد إلى منزلها». قال أتيمو: «نعم». رد التاجر: «حسنًا، أعتقد أنها ستكون سعيدة بالبقاء معك الآن».

"Oh wow!" said Atemu. "Thank you so much." He looked at Amethyst, and she jumped onto his shoulder. "She'll need a small house," said Mr Akhon. "I can make one!" said Atemu. "I'm learning to be a carpenter." "I'll help you," said his dad.

قال أتيمو: «أووه رائع». «شكرًا جزيلًا». نظر إلى أمائيست وقفزت هى على كتفه. قال السيد آخون: «سوف تحتاج لمنزل صغير». قال أتيمو: «أستطيع أن أصنع واحدًا، فأنا أتعلم أن أكون نجارًا». قال والده: «سوف أساعدك».



On the boat home, Atemu's father said. "Mr Akhon is a very good man. He gave you his best bird!" Atemu said. "Yes. How can I thank him?" "You could ask the scribe to write a thank you letter for you," said his father. "Good idea!" said Atemu!" "And Amethyst can take it to him!"

على متن القارب العائد للبيت، قال والد أتيمو: «السيد آخون رجل صالح جدًا. لقد أعطاك طائره المفضل». قال أتيمو: «نعم، كيف يمكننى أن أشكره؟» قال الأب: «يمكننك أن تطلب من الكاتب أن يكتب لك خطاب شكر من أجله». قال أتيمو: «يا لها من فكرة رائعة. وتستطيع أمائيست أن تأخذه إليه».

Practice

Story

General Practice

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 The Ancient Egyptians used to write on.

a) beak b) grain c) hole d) papyrus

2 The built a wooden table.

a) merchant b) carpenter c) flock d) vet

3 A of birds flew across the sky.

a) flock b) bowl c) stripe d) letter

4 are special houses for birds.

a) Holes b) Mountains c) Dovecotes d) Yards

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

purple – stripes – beaks – boxes



All of the birds were light gray, with green feathers on their necks and(1)..... feathers on their chests. But one bird was a little different. It was bigger than the other birds. They had yellow(2)....., but its beak was dark gray. It also sounded different. The sound the other birds made was a long "whoo", but it went "coo coo". It had(3)..... on its wings.

3 Read the text and answer the questions:



Atemu looked after the pigeon. He made it a high table, which the cat couldn't jump onto. He gave it water and grain and talked to it. The pigeon cooed back happily. Atemu's father went to the city. Three days later, he came home.

He knew that the message was for a jewelry merchant in the city, Mr Akhon. He took him the message, and he was very happy! It was an order for a lot of gold jewelry from the capital city. It was very important for him. Mr Akhon also wants his pigeon. They will take it to him next week.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 Atemu looked after the

a) cat b) cow c) pigeon d) horse

2 The word "merchant" means

a) teacher b) trader c) carpenter d) scribe

B Answer the following questions:

3 How did Atemu look after the pigeon?

.....

4 What was the message about?

.....

5 Summarize the first paragraph in one sentence.

.....

4 What did you learn about Atemu and his family? Write and answer T (True) or F (False):

1 Atemu lives in a big town. ()

2 Nedjem is Atemu's older sister. ()

3 Atemu is ten years old. ()

4 Atemu goes to school. ()

5 Atemu's father makes things from wood. ()

6 Atemu has a cat. ()

5 Who says this in the story? Read and write the names: SB

Atemu – Atemu's father – Atemu's mother – Nedjem

1 "I think its wing is hurt."

2 "You should catch rats and snakes, not birds!"

3 "It can't fly."

4 "That's very clever!"

5 "I'll take it to my friend, the scribe."

6 Read and answer:

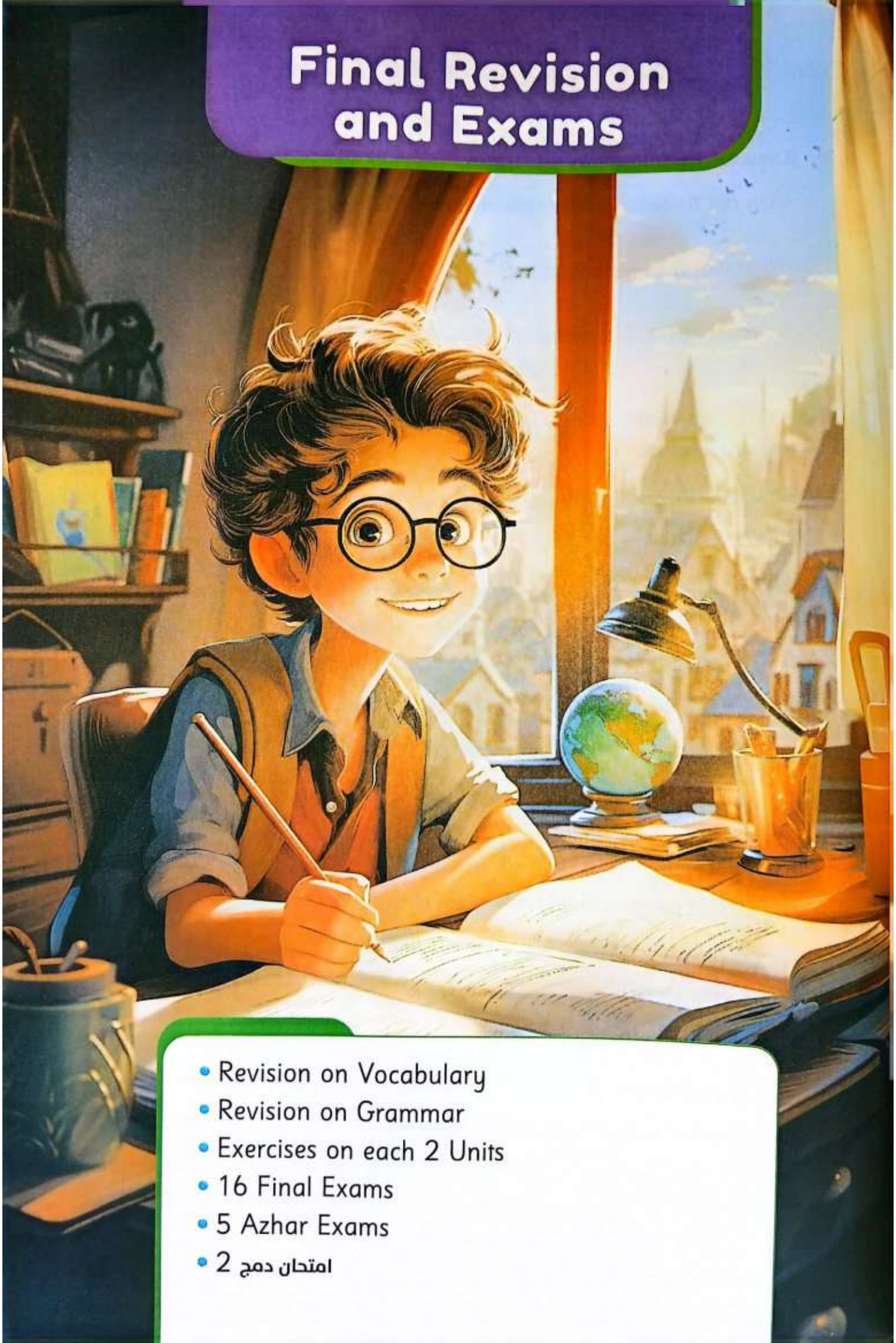
1 What was the story mainly about? SB

.....

2 Where did Atemu live?

.....

Final Revision and Exams



- Revision on Vocabulary
- Revision on Grammar
- Exercises on each 2 Units
- 16 Final Exams
- 5 Azhar Exams
- 2 امتحان دمج

Units 7 & 8 A) Revision on Vocabulary



Unit 7

gold	ذهب	clay	طين/ صلصال	glass	زجاج
granite	جرانيت	materials	مواد/ خامات	artifacts	قطع أثرية/ تحف فنية
fascinating	مذهل	valuable	قيم/ ثمين	durable	متين
stone	حجر	climate	مناخ	rat	فأر
monkey	قرد	baboon	قرد البابون	crocodile	تمساح
hippo	فرس النهر	falcon	صقر	ibis	طائر أبو منجل
snake	ثعبان	pets	حيوانات أليفة	wisdom	حكمة
afterlife	الحياة بعد الموت	common	شائع	mummified	محنط
local	محلى	grain	حبوب	popular	معروف / منتشر
pests	آفات	dangerous	خطير	presentation	عرض تقديمي
metal	معدن	trading	تجارة	weapons	أسلحة
economy	اقتصاد	countries	دول	jewelry	مجوهرات
decorations	ديكورات	silver	فضة	sculptures	منحوتات
craftsmen	حرفيون	meteorites	نيازك	dagger	خنجر
mine	منجم/ ينقب	iron	حديد	copper	نحاس
bronze	معدن البرونز	heaven	جنة	agricultural	زراعى
The Museum of Ancient History	متحف التاريخ القديم	guide	مرشد	eagle	نسر
papyrus	نبات البردى	pots	أوانى فخارية	tomb	مقبرة
farmers	مزارعون	statues	تماثيل	university	الجامعة
hiking	التنزه على الأقدام	tools	أدوات	adore	يعشق
scarab amulet	(تميمة الجعران) الخنفساء	fortune	حظ	precious	ثمين
tears	دموع	castle	قلعة	wish	أمنية

Unit 8

doll's house	بيت الدمية	rollerblades	حذاء التزحلق	action figure	مجسم لشخصية كرتونية
board game	لعبة لوحية	cuddly toy	دمية محشوة (دبدوب)	train set	لعبة القطار
marbles	كرات زجاجية (البلى)	skateboard	لوح التزحلق	favorite	مفضل
successful	ناجح	brilliant	رائع	skipping	نط الحبل
hopscotch	الحجلة (لعبة المربعات)	hide and seek	لعبة الغميضة	project	مشروع
hiding	الاختباء	chalk	طباشير	squares	مربعات
stickers	ملصقات	helmet	خوذة	knee pads	واقى ركبة
imagination	خيال	market	سوق	stall	كشك
button	زر	trunk	خرطوم الفيل	sail	شراع
wood	خشب	metal	معدن	boats	قوارب
wheels	عجلات	lemonade	عصير الليمون	machine	آلة
tired	متعب	video games	ألعاب الفيديو	bricks	طوب (مكعبات البناء)
creative	مبدع	games console	لوحة تحكم الألعاب	adventure games	ألعاب مغامرة
modern	حديث	images	صور	cities	مدن
child	طفل	cloth	قماش	problem	مشكلة
description	وصف	graphics	رسومات	ideas	أفكار
dice	نرد	counters	قطع اللعب	cardboard	ورق مقوى

Practice on Vocabulary (Units 7 & 8)

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 is a very hard and durable stone. بنى سويف – إدارة الواسطى 2024
a) Sand b) Glass c) Clay d) Granite

2 Rats and snakes are
a) sports b) pots c) pests d) squares

3 Don't the pot with your hands. It's very hot. القاهرة – إدارة العطرية 2024
a) make b) touch c) change d) walk

4 A is the long nose of an elephant. بنى سويف 2024
a) button b) trunk c) stall d) sail

5 When a metal is very hard, it is called
a) valuable b) useless c) durable d) rare

6 Spiderman was my favorite بنى سويف – إدارة الواسطى 2024
a) food b) action figure c) place d) color

7 Gold is a popular metal for making إدارة الفتح - أسيوط 2024
a) clothes b) jewelry c) glasses d) food

8 My sister is really good at and seek. بنى سويف – إدارة إهناسيا 2024
a) hopscotch b) skipping c) marbles d) hide

9 I wear when I play with my skateboard to protect my legs. إدارة الفتح – أسيوط 2024
a) knee pads b) sunglasses c) shorts d) watches

10 Video games are great when they are بنى سويف – إدارة الواسطى 2024
a) boring b) creative c) hard d) useless

11 The is my favorite bird. القاهرة – إدارة القطامية 2024
a) hippo b) rat c) falcon d) lion

12 I like to go skating on a from time to time. بنى سويف 2024
a) marble b) joystick c) skateboard d) bread

13 is buying and selling things between countries. بنى سويف 2024
a) Trade b) Culture c) Fighting d) Hunting

14 A is a large table that you use to sell things at the market.
a) toy b) button c) stall d) sail

15 Mom me in every game. She's more successful than me.
a) makes b) looks c) beats d) visits

16 To means to cover in oils and cloth to preserve for a very long time. بنى سويف 2024
a) adore b) mummify c) succeed d) keep

17 A tells tourists information about the artifacts they see. بنى سويف 2024
a) doctor b) craftsman c) guide d) vet

18 A is an object used for fighting or hunting animals. الدقهلية – إدارة بنى عبيد 2024
a) grabber b) joystick c) button d) weapon

19 Using your knowledge to make a good decision is called القاهرة – إدارة المطرية 2024
a) weapon b) heaven c) wisdom d) history

20 My favorite toy was a It's soft and cute. أسيوط – إدارة صدفا 2024
a) cuddly toy b) skateboard c) marble d) board game

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

A) preserve – climate – School – sink بنى سويف – إهناسيا 2024

I went to the Museum of Ancient History last week. I met some students who are at Egyptian Eagles Primary(1)..... . I learned about Ancient Egyptians artifacts. The(2)..... is hot and dry in Egypt, that's why many artifacts aren't damaged by cold and wet weather. This helps to(3)..... the artifacts. I knew that the Ancient Egyptians built the Pyramids with granite, a very hard and durable stone.

B) weapons – Copper – trade – countries القاهرة – إدارة المطرية 2024

The Ancient Egyptians used iron for small items, like jewelry.(1)..... and bronze were common metals because they were easier to find. But later on, iron, agricultural tools, and(2)..... began to appear. They got more iron through(3)..... with other countries.

C) outside – animals – cities – hour القاهرة – إدارة المطرية 2024

My favorite games are video games. I don't play them very often, though. I play them for about an(1)..... on the weekend. My favorite video games are ones where you can build(2)..... . I've made a really big city that has(3)..... and plants in it. I like these games because you can be creative and make something new.

D) hopscotch – younger – video – seek الدقهلية – إدارة دكرنس 2024

Mona is doing a project about games. She asked two of her friends about the games they played when they were(1)..... . The first one said that she was playing hide and(2)..... . She was very good at hiding. The second one liked(3)..... . She was playing it with her brothers. She used colored chalk to draw squares on the ground.

Units 7 & 8 B) Revision on Grammar



Unit 7 — 1. The Past Simple Tense زمن الماضى البسيط

We use the past simple tense to express an action that happened and ended in the past at a certain time.

Affirmative Form: صيغة الإثبات:

يتكون الفعل فى الماضى من التصريف الثانى للفعل وينقسم إلى (regular verbs) و (irregular verbs):

1. Regular Verbs أفعال منتظمة

- الأفعال المنتهية بـ (a - e - i - o - u) + حرف ساكن، يضاف لها (ed) مع مضاعفة الحرف الساكن: drop → dropped
- الأفعال المنتهية بحرف ساكن + (y)، نحذف الـ (y) ويضاف إليها الـ (ied): mummify → mummified
- الأفعال المنتهية بـ (e) يضاف لها (d): adore → adored
- معظم الأفعال يضاف لها (ed): talk - talked, clean - cleaned

2. Irregular Verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

الأفعال غير المنتظمة لا تتبع قاعدة عند تحويلها للماضى البسيط وتحفظ كما هى، على سبيل المثال:

Present	Past	Present	Past
be (am – is – are)	was / were	keep	kept
come	came	teach	taught
become	became	grow	grew
go	went	have	had

e.g. – Sama traveled to London last year. – He went to the zoo.

Negative Form: صيغة النفى:

Subject الفاعل + didn't + (inf.) الفعل فى المصدر

e.g. – People in the past didn't have cars. – She didn't study yesterday.

Yes/No Question: السؤال بـ "هل":

A: Did + subject + (inf.) الفعل فى المصدر ...?

B: Yes,	subject (الفاعل)	did.
B: No,		didn't.

e.g. A: Did you do your homework? B: Yes , I did. Or No, I didn't.

Wh- Question: السؤال باستخدام كلمة الاستفهام:

A: Wh- word (كلمة الاستفهام)	did	subject	...? الفعل فى المصدر (inf.)

e.g. A: When did you travel? B: I traveled last week.

Key words: الكلمات الدالة:

yesterday – last – ago – in the past

e.g.
- Hana went to the zoo yesterday.
- I visited my grandparents last week.
- Hossam and Ali met each other an hour ago.
- We lived in a village in the past.

2. Verb to "be" in the past simple

Affirmative Form: صيغة الأثبات:

I/ He/ She/ It + was	We/ They/ You + were

e.g. Soha was sick last week.

e.g. Cats were important pets in Ancient Egypt.

Negative Form: صيغة النفى:

I/ He/ She/ It + was not (wasn't)	We/ They/ You + were not (weren't)

e.g. There wasn't a statue in the temple.

e.g. They weren't at school yesterday.

Yes/No Question: السؤال بـ "هل":

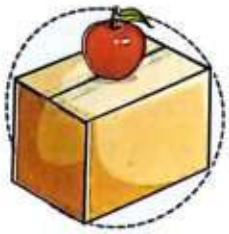
A: Was / Were + subject ...?		
B: Yes,	subject	was/ were.
B: No,		wasn't/ weren't.

e.g. A: Was Hossam at the museum yesterday?
B: No, he wasn't.

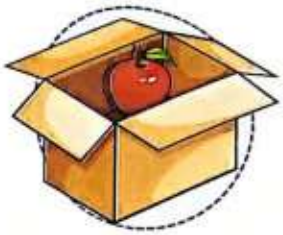
e.g. A: Were there a lot of artifacts in the museum?
B: Yes, there were.

3. Prepositions of place

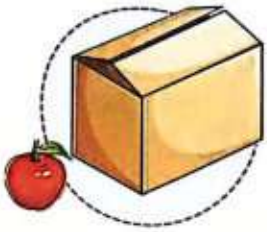
We use prepositions of place to say where things are.



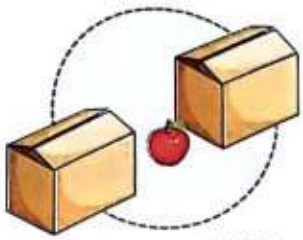
on على



in في



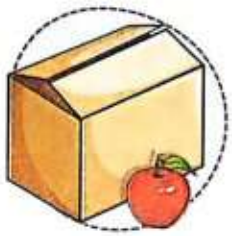
in front of أمام



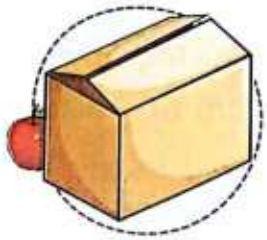
between بين



under تحت



next to بجوار



behind خلف

A: Where is/are + اسم الشيء?
B: It's / They're + حرف الجر الخاص بالمكان + اسم شيء آخر .

e.g. A: Where is the ball? B: It's under the table.

Unit 8

1. Intensifiers

We use intensifiers to give a stronger meaning to adjectives and verbs.

1. We can use really, very, or so to strengthen an adjective.

really + adjective	really + verb	so / very + adjective

e.g. – I was really good at hiding. – Sarah wasn't very good at skipping.

2. To make the adjective less strong:

quite + adjective

e.g. I thought hopscotch was quite good.

3. To strengthen the negative sentence:

negative verb + at all

e.g. He didn't like skipping at all.

2. Verbs that are followed by the "verb + ing"

start	continue	finish	stop	like / dislike	+ verb + ing.
love	enjoy	prefer	hate	imagine	

e.g. – Hana started reading stories a year ago. – I prefer drinking coffee to tea.



on Grammar (Units 7 & 8)

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 I like watching English movies. الدقهلية – إدارة بنى عبيد 2024
a) quite b) at all c) really d) very

2 There is a chair to the desk. بنى سويف – إهناسيا 2024
a) in front b) behind c) next d) on

3 The rats didn't the grain. بنى سويف – إدارة بيا 2024
a) ate b) eats c) eat d) eating

4 What did he yesterday? بنى سويف – إهناسيا 2024
a) have b) has c) having d) had

5 We met them of the park yesterday. الجيزة – بولاق الدكرور 2024
a) in front b) between c) next d) on

6 there a lot of mummies in the museum?
a) Is b) Was c) Has d) Were

7 I travel last month. I stayed home.
a) don't b) didn't c) doesn't d) won't

8 He to get some information about the museum yesterday.
a) needs b) needing c) needed d) need

9 We a wonderful guide during our last visit.
a) met b) meets c) meeting d) meet

10 They didn't the animals yesterday.
a) fed b) feed c) feeding d) feeds

11 A: Where is my book? B: It's the bag.
a) in front b) next c) in d) between

12 The building is the school and the shopping mall.
a) in b) under c) in front d) between

13 Look down, your pen is the desk.
a) between b) under c) in front d) next

14 A: is the king's mask? B: It's in the museum.
a) Where b) When c) What d) How

15 The dog was hiding the door and I couldn't see it.
a) between b) in front of c) in d) behind

16 When Amina was younger, she wasn't good at making up new games
a) very b) so c) really d) at all

17 I think hopscotch is good, but I prefer hide and seek.
a) never b) quite c) very d) so

18 Can you imagine a train?
a) drive b) driving c) drives d) drove

19 My cousins enjoyed squares for hopscotch.
a) draw b) draws c) drawing d) drew

20 When will you finish for your exam?
a) studying b) study c) studies d) studied

2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1 I don't like playing football (really). بنى سويف 2024

2 We (have) dinner at a local restaurant a week ago.

3 Last night, I finished (do) my homework. القاهرة – إدارة المطرية 2024

4 They like (fly) kites at the park. أسيوط – إدارة البدارى 2024

5 She didn't like hide and seek (very). She couldn't hide. أسيوط 2024

6 Nour (very) likes reading. She spends hours reading books.

7 (Do) she swim in the sea last summer? بنى سويف – إدارة ناصر 2024

8 Grandpa prefers (play) board games to skipping. بنى سويف – إدارة الواسطى 2024

9 I like (help) my mom in the kitchen. القاهرة – إدارة دار السلام 2024

10 She (weren't) at school last week. بنى سويف 2024

11 A: (Was) there books on the table? B: Yes, there were. بنى سويف – إهناسيا 2024

12 Ahmed (don't) come from France yesterday. بنى سويف – إهناسيا 2024

13 We (very) enjoyed our trip last holiday. بنى سويف – إدارة الفشن 2024

14 There are some trees in front (on) my house. بنى سويف – إدارة ببا 2024

15 They (doesn't) use plastic in the past. بنى سويف 2024

16 I (travel) to Cairo last year. بنى سويف – إهناسيا 2024

17 When (does) you get up yesterday? بنى سويف – إهناسيا 2024

18 There is no food in the kitchen (quite). البحر الأحمر – إدارة الغردقة 2024

19 We enjoy (cook) pizza. الدقهلية – إدارة السنبلاوين 2024

20 They finished (paint) the apartment yesterday. الدقهلية – إدارة أجا 2024

Units 9 & 10 A) Revision on Vocabulary



Unit 9

setting	الوقت والمكان للقصة	ending	النهاية (الخاتمة)	characters	شخصيات
narrator	الراوى	moral	المغزى (الدرس الأخلاق)	story	قصة
countryside	الريف	review	مراجعة	son	ابن
differences	اختلافات	journey	رحلة	grandparents	الأجداد
message	رسالة	bottle	زجاجة	beginning	بداية
event	حدث	paper	ورقة	beach	شاطئ
text message	رسالة نصية	idea	فكرة	sheep	خروف / خرفان
shepherd	الراعى (راعى الماشية)	villager	قروى	wolf	ذئب
hill	تل	grass	عشب	lonely	وحيد
bored	يشعر بالملل	field	حقل	tools	أدوات
joke	مزحة	real	حقيقى	untrue	غير حقيقى
once	ذات مرة	reply	رد	coast	ساحل
sailing	الإبحار	whale	حوت	France	فرنسا
Sudan	السودان	Algeria	الجزائر	Morocco	المغرب
sand	رمال	forest	غابة	email address	عنوان البريد الإلكترونى
truth	الحقيقة	whisper	يهمس	west	غرب
whale	حوت	wave	يلوح/ يشاور	scared	خائف

Unit 10

proverbs	أمثال	successful	ناجح	similar	متشابه
careful	مهتم/ حريص	sensible	منطقى/ عقلانى	feathers	ريش
description	وصف	real/ true	حقيقى	well-known	مشهور
exactly	بالظبط	nest	عش	plans	خطط
bird-watching	مشاهدة الطيور	sailing on the Nile	الإبحار فى النيل	going on safari	الذهاب فى رحلة سفارى
hiking	التنزه	snorkeling	الغطس	taking photos	التقاط الصور
eco-tourism	السياحة البيئية	sustainable	مستمر/ دائم	accommodation	مكان المبيت
safari desert	رحلة سفارى فى الصحراء	traditional	تقليدى	distance	مسافة
historical	تاريخى	water birds	طيور مائية	environment	البيئة
simple	بسيط	habitat	موطن / بيئة طبيعية	ideal	مثالى
nature	طبيعة	pollution	تلوث	species	أنواع/ فصائل
traffic	حركة مرورية	relaxing	مريح	campsite	مخيم/ معسكر
eco-friendly	صديق للبيئة	pelican	بجعة	swift	طائر السمام
eagle	نسر	kingfisher	طائر الرفراف	flock	سرب (قطيع)
oases	واحات	flamingos	طيور النحام	migrate	يهاجر
flood	فيضان	blog	مدونة	coral reefs	الشعاب المرجانية
garden box	حوض الزرع	sea life	الحياة البحرية	planet	كوكب
worm	دودة	scary	مخيف	protected area	منطقة محمية
underwater photography	التصوير تحت الماء	vacation	إجازة	tour	جولة سياحية
tent	خيمة	respect	يحترم	eco-tourist	سائح بيئى
recycle trash	يعيد تدوير المخلفات	explore	يستكشف	go sightseeing	يشاهد المعالم السياحية



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 The story has a that Goha wants to teach us. الدقهلية – إدارة بنى عبيد 2024
a) setting b) moral c) ending d) game

2 My uncle has a farm in the بنى سويف – إدارة إهناسيا 2024
a) lake b) mountain c) countryside d) river

3 The students took to answer in the class.
a) meals b) turns c) place d) from

4 The wants to eat the sheep. بنى سويف – إدارة الواسطى 2024
a) horse b) dolphin c) cat d) wolf

5 I was really when I won the competition.
a) loud b) excited c) funny d) angry

6 Goha's are funny. القاهرة – إدارة الجمالية 2024
a) sons b) toys c) stories d) homes

7 My grandparents lived the sea. The beach is near their house. القاهرة – إدارة الجمالية 2024
a) to b) on c) of d) by

8 The narrator is the person who the story. أسيوط – إدارة القوصية 2024
a) says b) learns c) tells d) speaks

9 Don't too many plans before something is real.
a) use b) agree c) make d) do

10 I go to the beach to بنى سويف – إدارة إهناسيا 2024
a) sleep b) surf c) write d) send

11 We our teachers and love them. أسيوط – إدارة صدفا 2024
a) forget b) respect c) annoy d) scare

12 When you, no one can hear you. بنى سويف 2024
a) whisper b) cry c) shout d) see

13 A is a place where an animal or a plant lives. أسيوط – إدارة البدارى 2024
a) tomb b) statue c) bottle d) habitat

14 The looks after the sheep. أسيوط – إدارة صدفا 2024
a) shepherd b) dentist c) player d) engineer

15 They go on in the desert. أسيوط – إدارة البدارى 2024
a) water b) safari c) boats d) diving

16 Many birds to find warmer weather in winter. أسيوط 2024
a) walk b) sing c) swim d) migrate

17 The setting is the place and of a story. بنى سويف 2024
a) time b) end c) action d) moral

18 My granddad is a good He tells us fine stories. بنى سويف 2024
a) narrator b) doctor c) cook d) player

19 Your news is always It happens and is true. بنى سويف 2024
a) unreal b) real c) wrong d) false

20 They like their boat on the River Nile. بنى سويف – إدارة الواسطى 2024
a) selling b) sailing c) swimming d) diving

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

A) grass – wolf – shepherd – sheep بنى سويف 2024

Peter was a boy who lived in a village. He worked as a(1)..... . Every day, he took the(2)..... up the hill and rested while the sheep ate the delicious(3)..... . One day, he felt lonely and bored and decided to have some fun, he shouted, "Wolf! There's a wolf!" But that was untrue.

B) migrate – hotter – flocks – cold بنى سويف – إدارة الواسطى 2024

Many birds migrate to and from Egypt. North Africa is(1)..... than Europe, so in winter, many birds fly to Egypt and other warm places. Birds such as eagles and swifts(2)..... to Egypt. You can see large(3)..... of birds such as pelicans near water. These birds often eat fish that live in rivers and seas.

C) coast – desert – market – sail بنى سويف – إدارة الواسطى 2024

I live in Hurghada. It is an amazing place. There are lots to do and see here. I usually go to the(1)..... with my mother to buy our food. I enjoy living here as I live on the(2)..... and I always(3)..... my boat. Last week, I saw something in the water. I found a message in a bottle. I read it happily because it was for me.

D) sustainable – nature – protect – pollution بنى سويف – إدارة إهناسيا 2024

Eco-tourism is a way of traveling that doesn't damage the environment. It's more(1)..... than traditional tourism. It's designed to protect(2)..... . People stay in simple accommodation. They also mustn't travel in ways that cause lots of(3)..... .

Units 9 & 10 B) Revision on Grammar



Unit 9

1. The Past Continuous Tense

We use the past continuous tense in stories to say what was happening at a particular time in the past.

I. Affirmative Form:

I/ He/ She/ It	was	verb + ing.
You/ We/ They	were	

e.g. John was walking his dog yesterday at noon.

2. Negative sentence:

I/ He/ She/ It	wasn't	verb + ing.
You/ We/ They	weren't	

e.g. They weren't sleeping at 8.00 yesterday.

3. Yes/No Questions:

Was	I/ he/ she/ it	verb + ing ...?
Were	you/ we/ they	

Yes,	subject	was/were.
No,		wasn't / weren't.

e.g. A: Was she writing a book? B: Yes, she was. or No, she wasn't.

4. Wh-Question:

Wh-word	was / were	subject	verb + ing ...?

e.g. A: What were you doing at 6.00 yesterday? B: I was studying.

Key words:

all (day/ morning/ evening/ night) yesterday/ at (6, 7, 8, ... o'clock/ am/ pm) yesterday

2. "When"

Past continuous الماضى المستمر ← when → Past simple الماضى البسيط

e.g. The children were playing in the park when mom called them out.

When ← Past simple الماضى البسيط → Past continuous الماضى المستمر

e.g. When my dad came home, I was reading a book.

3. Sequencing adverbs

First أولًا → Next التالى → Then ثم → After that بعد ذلك → Finally وأخيرًا

Unit 10

1. Must / Mustn't

We use "must" when we talk about something that we have to do or that is important to do.

Subject + must + (inf.) مصدر الفعل

e.g. My parents must bring a tent.

We use "mustn't" (must not) when we are not allowed to do something.

Subject + mustn't + (inf.) مصدر الفعل

e.g. We mustn't swim here.

Remember:

The Present Simple Tense زمن المضارع البسيط

Affirmative Form:

I / We / They / You + (inf.) الفعل فى المصدر

e.g. I get up at 6 am every day.

He/ She/ It + (inf. + s, es, ies)

e.g. She goes to school on foot.

Negative Form:
صيغة النفى

I/We/They/You + don't + (inf.) الفعل فى المصدر

e.g. The children don't go to the park after school.

He/She/It + doesn't + (inf.) الفعل فى المصدر

e.g. Fatma doesn't speak English.

The Future Simple Tense زمن المستقبل البسيط

Affirmative Form:

Subject (الفاعل) + will + (inf.) الفعل فى المصدر

e.g. We will meet at the club tomorrow.

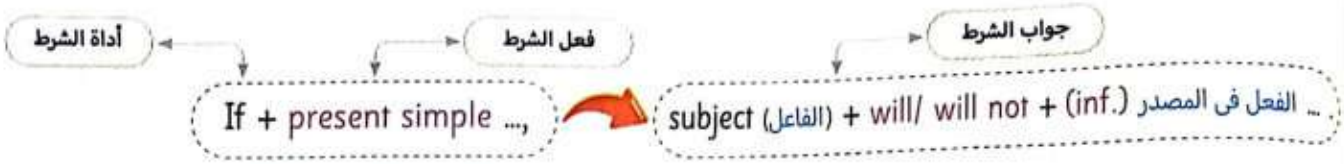
Negative Form:

Subject (الفاعل) + will not = won't + (inf.) الفعل فى المصدر

e.g. Soha won't travel next week.

2. If (First Conditional)

Form:



e.g. If I am hungry, I will eat a snack.



e.g. He'll miss the bus if he doesn't leave now.

3. Conjunctions الروابط

I like going to the cinema	**and**	watching movies.	و
I want to play football,	**but**	my leg is hurt.	لكن
I was tired,	**so**	I didn't go to work.	لذلك
I didn't go to work	**because**	I was tired.	لأن

Practice on Grammar (Units 9 & 10)

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 You shout in the classroom. بنى سويف – إهناسيا 2024
a) must b) mustn't c) doesn't d) hasn't

2 When the teacher to the class, pupils were making noise. أسيوط – إدارة منفلوط 2024
a) came b) come c) coming d) comes

3 I go to school I want to learn. الجيزة – الدقى 2024
a) to b) or c) so d) because

4 Tom was his message when grandma came into the room.
a) writes b) writing c) write d) wrote

5 To make a cup of tea, ... you have to boil the water.
a) next b) finally c) first d) then

6 If the weather fine tomorrow, we will go for a walk.
a) is b) be c) was d) are

7 They indoors if it rains.
a) will stay b) stay c) stays d) stayed

8 If he in the street, his mother will punish him.
a) played b) play c) plays d) playing

9 If they hard, they will get the full marks.
a) studied b) study c) studying d) studies

10 If he takes more lessons, he will good at math.
a) is b) are c) was d) be

11 I go to the club next Friday.
a) didn't b) won't c) don't d) am not

12 Lions all day long yesterday.
a) were roaring b) roar c) are roaring d) roared

13 They yesterday morning to Cairo.
a) drive b) can drive c) were driving d) is driving

14 When it rained, I home.
a) walk b) walking c) was walking d) were walking

15 They football when the phone rang.
a) played b) were playing c) playing d) are playing

16 When they the dolphin, they were swimming.
a) saw b) were seeing c) seeing d) sees

17 the light went out, he was studying.
a) Where b) When c) Why d) What

18 You play with matches. It is dangerous.
a) must b) mustn't c) doesn't d) hasn't

19 I turn the music down. The music is so loud.
a) must b) mustn't c) doesn't d) hasn't

20 We stop here. It's not allowed.
a) must b) mustn't c) doesn't d) hasn't

2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1 You (must) walk in the desert when it's hot. أسيوط – إدارة القوصية 2024

2 Dad was (read) a newspaper when Zeina came. أسيوط – إدارة القوصية 2024

3 If she (make) mistakes, the teacher will be angry. الدقهلية – إدارة بنى عبيد 2024

4 (Are) Ahmed and Ali playing football yesterday? القاهرة – إدارة المطرية 2024

5 They were (bake) cookies when I came home. أسيوط – إدارة صدفا 2024

6 She (play) the piano when her father arrived home. أسيوط 2024

7 She was (go) home when she met Amira. بنى سويف 2024

8 You mustn't (leaves) trash in the park. بنى سويف 2024

9 When she came from school, her mom was (cook). أسيوط – إدارة القوصية 2024

10 You (mustn't) listen to your teacher. الشرقية – إدارة أولاد صقر 2024

11 We (must) swim because there might be sharks here. بنى سويف – إدارة الواسطى 2024

12 They must (following) the school rules. بنى سويف – إدارة ناصر 2024

13 Hazem is sick, ... (but) he will see a doctor. بنى سويف – إدارة الواسطى 2024

14 If she (feel) thirsty, she will drink some water. القاهرة – إدارة دار السلام 2024

15 We were (watch) the movie at 9 pm last night. الجيزة – إدارة بولاق الدكرور 2024

16 Heba (is) swimming in the sea yesterday morning. بنى سويف – إهناسيا 2024

17 They (was) drinking cola when I met them at the club. بنى سويف – إهناسيا 2024

18 You must (are) careful. بنى سويف 2024

19 If we (not/ leave) now, we won't catch the bus. الدقهلية – إدارة ميت غمر 2024

20 (Finally), boil the water. Next, put the tea bag. القاهرة – إدارة القاهرة الجديدة 2024

Units 11 & 12 A) Revision on Vocabulary



Unit 11

volunteer	يتطوع/ متطوع	community	مجتمع	organization	مؤسسة
kindergarten class	حضانة/ رياض أطفال	kind to	طيب مع	vegetable garden	حديقة نباتية
nervous	متوتر	skills	مهارات	paintings	رسومات
nature camera	كاميرا لتصوير الطبيعة	grabber	خطاف / لاقط	multi-grip	مقبض متعدد الاستخدامات
day center	مركز رعاية نهارى	stick	عصا	exhibition	معرض فنى
gloves	قفازات	character	شخصية	metal	معدنى
handle	مقبض/ يد	fingers	أصابع	app	تطبيق
jars	برطمانات	games console	وحدة تحكم فى الألعاب	controller	جهاز التحكم
joy stick	عصا التحكم	button	زر	interview	مقابلة شخصية
volunteering	التطوع	fundraising	جمع التبرعات	experience	خبرة / تجربة
timetable	جدول زمنى	charity	جمعية خيرية	rewarding	مُجزٍ
citizens	مواطنون	confidence	الثقة	teenagers	مراهقون
biography	سيرة ذاتية	social science	العلوم الاجتماعية	community worker	ناشط مجتمعى
fundraiser	جامع تبرعات	life skills	مهارات حياتية	award	جائزة/ مكافأة
donate	يتبرع	participate	يشارك	support	يدعم / يساند
menu	قائمة	home button	زر القائمة الرئيسية	action button	زر الحركة
directions	اتجاهات	leader	قائد	event	حدث
neighbor	جار	donations	تبرعات	abilities	قدرات

Unit 12: Story

amethyst	الجَمَشْت/ الأمانيست (حجر كريم)	carpenter	نجار	coo	هديل (الصوت الذى يصدره الحمام)
dome	قبة	jewelry	مجوهرات	order	طلب (تجارى)
carrier pigeon	الحمام الزاجل	yard	فناء	grain	حبوب
flock	سرب	wooden box	صندوق خشبى	papyrus	ورق بردى
message	رسالة	scribe	كاتب	dovecotes	أبراج حمام
Nile Delta	الدلتا	light gray	رمادى فاتح	dark gray	رمادى غامق
huge	ضخم	nearby	مجاور	bowl	وعاء
shiny	لامع/ براق	chest	صدر	hungrily	بجوع
beak	منقار	suddenly	فجأة	stripes	خطوط
object	شىء	a piece of	قطعة من	inside	داخلى / بالداخل
holes	فتحات	special	خاص/ مميز	large	كبير / واسع
customer	عميل / زبون	soon	قريبا	letter	رسالة/ خطاب
cute	لطيف / جذاب	softly	برقة / بنعومة	trip	رحلة قصيرة
fill (v.)	يملأ	throw (v.)	يرمى	notice (v.)	يلاحظ
follow (v.)	يتبع	hurt (v.)/ (adj.)	مُصاب/ يُصاب	attach (v.)	يلحق بـ



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 Hady started to teach children basketball
a) meals b) skills c) ideas d) colors

2 When you, you spend time with people you like. القاهرة – إدارة القاهرة الجديدة 2024
a) neighbor b) participate c) socialize d) social

3 We wear to protect our hands. الدقهلية – إدارة السنبلاوين 2024
a) shoes b) gloves c) shirts d) skirts

4 You should be kind your parents. البحر الأحمر – إدارة الغردقة 2024
a) to b) of c) off d) in

5 We should older people in our community. الدقهلية – إدارة السنبلاوين 2024
a) donate b) support c) start d) finish

6 When people, they do a job without taking money for it.
a) volunteer b) donate c) support d) participate

7 Make a/an and follow it to make your work easier.
a) timetable b) organization c) charity d) event

8 I sometimes look my neighbors' cat when they are away. الدقهلية – إدارة السنبلاوين 2024
a) up b) off c) on d) after

9 To is to take part in something. الدقهلية – إدارة بني عبيد 2024
a) participate b) damage c) donate d) destroy

10 Press the to turn on the radio. بني سويف – إدارة الواسطى 2024
a) handle b) stick c) button d) grabber

11 A makes things from wood. بني سويف – إدارة إهناسيا 2024
a) doctor b) carpenter c) scribe d) farmer

12 We used a to record animals in the forest.
a) grabber b) multi-grip c) nature camera d) joystick

13 Some people to help clean trash from the river. بورسعيد – توجيه اللغة الإنجليزية 2024
a) saw b) grew c) played d) volunteered

14 You can use this to control where you go.
a) headphone b) handle c) laptop d) button

15 We can food together. I have a lot of sandwiches for us. القاهرة – إدارة روض الفرج 2024
a) buy b) share c) plant d) catch

16 are the people who live next to your home. القاهرة – إدارة المرج 2024
a) Neighbors b) Games c) Trips d) Parties

17 Mrs. Nadia a charity for children. الشرقية – إدارة منيا القمح 2024
a) works b) goes c) rains d) runs

18 Be and kind to your neighbors.
a) bad b) annoying c) angry d) polite

19 Volunteering isn't It's interesting.
a) good b) well c) boring d) nice

20 Ali always in the school activities.
a) looks after b) takes part c) gives away d) decides

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

A) gloves – clean-up – grabber – plastic

I'm Sara. I live in Alexandria. I do a beach(1)..... with my friends every weekend. We always wear(2)..... to protect our hands. We carry bags for the trash that we collect. We also use a(3)..... to pick up the trash. The grabber is a long metal stick with two fingers at the end. I really enjoy my weekends.

B) Fundraising – socialize – back – quickly الدقهلية – إدارة بني عبيد 2024

You learn many important life skills when you volunteer. You learn how to(1)..... and talk to people who you wouldn't usually meet. It gives you confidence. Teenagers develop when they start volunteering.(2)..... helps the charities get money they need. It's good to give(3)..... to the place where you live.

C) charities – give – fundraising – friendly الدقهلية – إدارة غرب المنصورة 2024

Helping your community is very important. Collecting money for charities is called(1)..... . It helps(2)..... get the money they need. It is also good to(3)..... back to the community. My advice to teenagers is to volunteer and help if you can. You'll enjoy it!

D) pictures – donated – toys – rooms القليوبية – إدارة العبور 2024

My little sister was sick last month, and she was in a hospital. She's better now, but when we visited her, she was sad because she didn't like being there. I thought it would be nice to do something for children who are sick. My friends and I painted lots of big(1)..... of flowers, animals, beaches, and trees. Our parents(2)..... lots of toys, too. We took them and the paintings to the hospital to make the(3)..... look nicer.

Unit 11 B) Revision on Grammar



Unit 11

1. Infinitives of purpose

1. We use "to + a verb in the base form" to explain why we do something.
نستخدم «to + مصدر الفعل» لشرح سبب قيامنا بشيء ما.

to + (inf.) مصدر الفعل .

e.g. He uses his computer to do his homework.

e.g. We go to the park to play football.

2. We also use "to + a verb in the base form" to answer questions with "Why".
نستخدم أيضًا «to + مصدر الفعل» للإجابة عن الأسئلة بـ «لماذا».

e.g. A: Why do you use a multi-grip?
B: To open jars.

e.g. A: Why do you get up early?
B: To do my homework.

2. Adverbs الأحوال

Adverbs are used to describe how things happen or are done.
تستخدم الأحوال لوصف كيفية حدوث الأشياء.

e.g. – He runs quickly. – They play well.

We can make adverbs by adding: يمكننا تكوين الأحوال بإضافة:

I. (-ly): لمعظم الصفات

e.g. quick سريع ⟶ quickly بسرعة

quiet هادئ ⟶ quietly بهدوء

patient صبور ⟶ patiently بصبر

bad سيئ ⟶ badly بطريقة سيئة

kind عطوف ⟶ kindly بعطف

beautiful جميل ⟶ beautifully بطريقة جميلة



Unit 11

1. Infinitives of purpose

1. We use "to + a verb in the base form" to explain why we do something.
نستخدم «to + مصدر الفعل» لشرح سبب قيامنا بشيء ما.

to + (inf.) مصدر الفعل .

e.g. He uses his computer to do his homework.

e.g. We go to the park to play football.

2. We also use "to + a verb in the base form" to answer questions with "Why".
نستخدم أيضًا «to + مصدر الفعل» للإجابة عن الأسئلة بـ «لماذا».

e.g. A: Why do you use a multi-grip?
B: To open jars.

e.g. A: Why do you get up early?
B: To do my homework.

2. Adverbs الأحوال

Adverbs are used to describe how things happen or are done.
تستخدم الأحوال لوصف كيفية حدوث الأشياء.

e.g. – He runs quickly. – They play well.

We can make adverbs by adding: يمكننا تكوين الأحوال بإضافة:

I. (-ly): لمعظم الصفات

e.g. quick سريع ⟶ quickly بسرعة

quiet هادئ ⟶ quietly بهدوء

patient صبور ⟶ patiently بصبر

bad سيئ ⟶ badly بطريقة سيئة

kind عطوف ⟶ kindly بعطف

beautiful جميل ⟶ beautifully بطريقة جميلة

2. (ily) الصفات المنتهية بـ (y + حرف ساكن)، يتم حذف الـ (y) وإضافة

e.g. angry غاضب ⟶ angrily بغضب

happy سعيد ⟶ happily بسعادة

3. (irregular) بعض الصفات لا تتبع القاعدة

e.g. fast سريع ⟶ fast بسرعة

hard جاد ⟶ hard بجد

good جيد ⟶ well بطريقة جيدة

Adverbs can come after the verb:

الظروف يمكن أن تأتى بعد الفعل:

Subject + verb + adverb

She danced beautifully.

رقصت بشكل جميل.



Adverbs can come before the verb:

الظروف يمكن أن تأتى قبل الفعل:

Subject + adverb + verb

He quietly talked to his friend.

تحدث بهدوء مع صديقه.



The adverbs can't come between the verb and its object.

لا يمكن للأحوال أن تأتى بين الفعل والمفعول به.

She quickly learned the rules. ✓

She learned the rules quickly. ✓

She learned quickly the rules. ✗



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 She stayed at home to
a) cleaned b) clean c) cleaning d) cleans

2 She wears sunglasses protect her eyes. القاهرة – توجيه اللغة الإنجليزية 2024
a) for b) off c) of d) to

3 We went to the cinema a nice film.
a) watching b) to watch c) watch d) watches

4 I went to the club to tennis.
a) play b) plays c) playing d) played

5 Mum went to the market fruits.
a) buys b) buying c) bought d) to buy

6 We went to the zoo to animals.
a) seeing b) see c) saw d) sees

7 He is studying hard get the full marks.
a) at b) for c) with d) to

8 Children go to school
a) learns b) to learn c) learning d) learn

9 We went to the park fun.
a) to have b) having c) have d) has

10 They went to the beach their time.
a) enjoying b) enjoyed c) to enjoy d) enjoy

11 She studied, so she succeeded in her exam. القاهرة – توجيه اللغة الإنجليزية 2024
a) badly b) well c) good d) kind

12 The turtle walks
a) slow b) slowly c) slowest d) a slow

13 The train moves
a) quickly b) quick c) sad d) happy

14 It rains
a) heavily b) heavy c) angry d) lazy

15 The sun shines
a) bright b) brightly c) dark d) bad

16 The old man walks
a) slow b) slowly c) fast d) fastly

17 He always talks when he is angry.
a) badly b) good c) well d) best

18 She studies during the exams.
a) badly b) good c) well d) best

19 Adam was late, so he had to run
a) happy b) angry c) quiet d) quickly

20 The exams were very
a) well b) hard c) patient d) beautifully

2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1 He went to the shopping mall to (bought) a jacket.

2 Islam answered the questions (easy). الدقهلية – إدارة بنى عبيد 2024

3 The turtle can't run. It walks (slow). بنى سويف 2024

4 Close the door (quiet), please. بنى سويف – إدارة الواسطى 2024

5 They played the match (good) yesterday. بنى سويف – إدارة الواسطى 2024

6 He ran (quick) to catch the bus. بنى سويف 2024

7 We go to school to (learns). بنى سويف 2024

8 An old man walks (slow). الدقهلية – إدارة السنبلاوين 2024

9 Birds sing (beautiful). I love them. القليوبية – إدارة العبور 2024

10 He laughed (loud). القاهرة – إدارة السلام 2024

11 I went to the club to (playing) football. القاهرة – إدارة السلام 2024

12 He waited (patient) for the plane to arrive. القاهرة – إدارة السلام 2024

13 My friend went to Cairo (at) visit a friend. بورسعيد – إدارة شمال 2024

14 He usually listens to his teacher (careful). القاهرة – إدارة القاهرة الجديدة 2024

15 He opened the door (quiet) because his little brother was sleeping.
القاهرة - إدارة الشروق 2024

16 He reads very (quick). I can't understand. الجيزة – العمرانية 2024

17 We wear gloves (at) protect our hands. الشرقية – إدارة الإبراهيمية 2024

18 Eman came first. She runs really (fastly). الشرقية – إدارة أبو حماد 2024

19 She uses her laptop to (doing) her homework. القاهرة – إدارة المرج 2024

20 Omar likes to swim (but) play tennis. دمياط – إدارة دمياط الجديدة 2024

Conjugation of Verbs

Regular verbs الأفعال المنتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past	Present		Past
damage	يدمر	damaged	preserve	يحفظ	preserved	last	يدوم	lasted
cover	يغطى	covered	adore	يعشق	adored	install	يركب (ينشىء)	installed
believe	يعتقد	believed	support	يدعم	supported	produce	ينتج	produced
volunteer	يتطوع	volunteered	kill	يقتل	killed	represent	يمثل	represented
mummify	يحنط	mummified	include	يشمل	included	trade	يتاجر	traded
heat	يسخن	heated	hunt	يصطاد	hunted	melt	يذيب	melted
help	يساعد	helped	develop	يطور	developed	trip	يتعثر	tripped
touch	يلمس	touched	celebrate	يحتفل	celebrated	wish	يتمني	wished
hug	يحتضن	hugged	film	يصور	filmed	return	يعود	returned
change	يتغير	changed	cry	يبكى	cried	pull	يسحب	pulled
mine	ينقب	mined	appear	يظهر	appeared	decorate	يزين	decorated
destroy	يدمر	destroyed	respect	يحترم	respected	try	يحاول	tried
invent	يخترع	invented	participate	يشارك	participated	use	يستخدم	used
practice	يتدرب	practiced	prefer	يفضل	preferred	shop	يتسوق	shopped
pick	يلتقط	picked	record	يسجل	recorded	scare	يخيف	scared
smile	يبتسم	smiled	laugh	يضحك	laughed	push	يضغط على	pushed
turn	يعمل/يدور	turned	reply	يرد	replied	share	يشارك	shared
imagine	يتخيل	imagined	paint	يدهن / يلون	painted	tidy up	يرتب	tidied up
solve	يحل	solved	design	يصمم	designed	carry	يحمل	carried
pass	يمر	passed	happen	يحدث	happened	disagree	يختلف (لا يتفق)	disagreed
fold	يطوى	folded	surf	يركب الأمواج	surfed	email	يراسل بالإيميل	emailed
answer	يجيب	answered	follow	يتبع	followed	rest	يستريح	rested
shout	يصرخ	shouted	reach	يصل إلى	reached	squeeze	يعصر	squeezed
annoy	يزعج	annoyed	donate	يتبرع	donated	waste	يهدر	wasted
arrive	يصل	arrived	suggest	يقترح	suggested	flock	يتجمع/ يحتشد	flocked
mention	يذكر	mentioned	count	يعد	counted	hatch	يفقس	hatched
dare	يجرؤ/ لا يخاف	dared	succeed	ينجح	succeeded	compare	يقارن	compared
snorkel	يغطس	snorkeled	sail	يبحر	sailed	protect	يحمى	protected
camp	يخيم/ يعسكر	camped	cause	يسبب	caused	migrate	يهاجر	migrated
start	يبدأ	started	organize	ينظم	organized	deliver	يوصل	delivered
volunteer	يتطوع	volunteered	socialize	يكون علاقات اجتماعية	socialized	receive	يستلم/يستقبل	received
care	يهتم	cared	collect	يجمع	collected	raise	يجمع التبرعات	raised

Irregular verbs الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past	Present	Past
know يعرف	knew	build يبنى	built	find يجد	found
make يصنع	made	hear يسمع	heard	keep يحتفظ بـ	kept
eat يأكل	ate	feed يُطعم	fed	teach يُدرس	taught
become يصبح	became	hurt يجرح / يأذى	hurt	grow up يكبر	grew up
fall يسقط	fell	buy يشترى	bought	sell يبيع	sold
tell يخبر	told	fight يحارب	fought	think يفكر	thought
give يعطى	gave	leave يغادر	left	lose يخسر	lost
spend يقضى	spent	beat يهزم	beat	hide يختبئ	hid
draw يرسم	drew	wear يرتدى	wore	choose يختار	chose
sit يجلس	sat	break يكسر	broke	let يسمح / يدع	let
say يقول	said	take يأخذ	took	win يفوز	won
write يكتب	wrote	ride يركب	rode	cut يقطع	cut
learn يتعلم	learnt / learned	swim يسبح	swam	put يضع	put
throw يقذف	threw	forget ينسى	forgot	shine يشرق	shone
send يرسل	sent	ring يرن	rang	read يقرأ	read
lie يستلقى	lay	understand يفهم	understood	mean يعنى/ يقصد	meant
come يأتى	came	fly يطير	flew	begin يبدأ	began
meet يقابل	met	lead يقود	led	run يدير	ran

Final Exams
الامتحانات معدلة طبقًا لأحدث مواصفات



خاص بجميع نصوص الاستماع لكل الامتحانات

Exam 1 محافظة القاهرة – إدارة الشروق

30

Listening

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: 4

1 Amira loves playing all kinds of
a) videos b) games c) foods d) cards

2 At school, they usually play
a) hide and seek b) hopscotch c) video games d) skipping

3 Her often beats her.
a) father b) sister c) brother d) family

4 She plays video games for about a/an a day.
a) week b) month c) hour d) minutes

Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: 1.5

1 This stone is very It's not easy to find.
a) rare b) common c) durable d) tough

2 Be with that sharp knife or you will hurt yourself.
a) crazy b) careful c) lazy d) careless

3 We must our environment.
a) destroy b) play c) protect d) damage

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: 1.5

litter – roof – tourists – coral reefs

I enjoy reading about the amazing places in Egypt. Ras Mohammed National Park, on the Red Sea, is a fantastic place for locals and(1)..... to visit. People come from all over the world to snorkel and scuba dive. You can see(2)..... and lots of brightly colored fish, and maybe sharks. But there is sometimes(3)..... on the beach, which is very bad for animals.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: 7

Our teacher talked about the different ways to be good citizens. I was so excited to know about them. You should respect others and be polite and kind to your neighbors. You can help people who are sick, or you can call your neighbor to offer to do their shopping or do jobs for them at home. Try to reduce waste and help the environment. Don't use plastic bags or plastic bottles. If you have plastic bottles at home, recycle them. Let's be good citizens and make the world a better place.

A **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:**

1 You should be to your neighbors.

a) angry b) rude c) unkind d) polite

2 The underlined word "recycle" means "..... ".

a) reuse b) replay c) repaint d) record

B **Answer the following questions:**

3 What can you do to help your neighbors?

4 How can you help the environment?

5 Summarize the text in two sentences.

Writing

5 **Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:** (1)

1 she – was – night – Why – sad – last?

2 this – Plant – seed – and – after – it – look.

6 **Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:** (4)

1 You mustn't (leaving) your trash in the garden.

2 He opened the door (quiet) because his little brother was sleeping.

7 **Punctuate the following:** (4)

1 do you want to read it

2 i found a box of my old toys

8 **Write a text of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements:** (7)

"My favorite story"

..... characters – setting

.....

.....

.....



Listening

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: (4)

1 Next week, Nadia is going in the mountains.
a) swimming b) camping c) playing d) hunting

2 They will camp in at night.
a) boats b) plants c) lizards d) tents

3 They are going to see birds and animals which live near the
a) water b) mountain c) hill d) cliff

4 There might be in the water, so they mustn't swim.
a) fish b) crabs c) crocodiles d) snakes



Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: (1.5)

1 Gold is very expensive. It is very
a) cheap b) valuable c) useless d) usual

2 A person tries hard not to make mistakes.
a) safe b) careful c) real d) bad

3 The is the lesson you learn from a story.
a) ending b) setting c) character d) moral

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: (1.5)

watching – eating – coral – fish

In the Ras Mohammed National Park, you can enjoy many beautiful things. It is protected but people are allowed to visit it. You can see(1)..... reefs, lots of brightly colored(2)..... and maybe sharks. There is lots of wildlife. It is a great place for bird(3)..... . Visitors can ride boats, swim, or snorkel in the sea.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: (7)

We all live together in a community. We should be good citizens. We can do lots of things to help our community. Volunteering is very interesting. We can volunteer at local charity events or help out in a community project. We must help our neighbors and be kind and polite to them. We could call old people and offer to do their

shopping. We must respect the environment by reducing waste and recycling plastic bottles. If we are all good citizens, the world will be a better place.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 The general idea of the text is about

a) students b) projects c) good citizens d) old people

2 The underlined word "respect" means to

a) help b) destroy c) kill d) finish

B Answer the following questions:

3 Where can you volunteer?

4 How could we help old people?

5 What could we do to respect the environment?

Writing

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences: (1)

1 football – think – I – so – is – exciting.

2 air – the – in – fresh – walking – likes – He.

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets: (4)

1 They (listen) to music when the man shouted.

2 My uncle went to Cairo to (visiting) his friends.

7 Punctuate the following: (4)

1 When did ali play with you

2 they walked quickly

8 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements: (7)

"My favorite pet"

..... What does it eat? – Why do you like it?

Exam 3 محافظة الجيزة - إدارة العمرانيـة (30)

Listening

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: (4)

1 My favorite story is "Goha and the ".
a) Horse b) Goat c) Donkey d) Camel

2 It took place in the
a) desert b) sea c) forest d) countryside

3 The characters are Goha, his, and the donkey.
a) friend b) son c) daughter d) wife

4 People weren't with anyone riding the donkey.
a) happy b) excited c) sad d) right

Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: (1.5)

1 To " " means to give something away to help a person or organization.
a) volunteer b) support c) donate d) participate

2 a boat is one of my favorite water activities.
a) Cycling b) Sailing c) Diving d) Eating

3 My friend sent a to my message.
a) reply b) bottle c) weekend d) book

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: (1.5)

mask – grain – snake – artifacts

Ancient Egyptian artifacts are amazing. One of the most beautiful(1)..... from Ancient Egypt is Tutankhamun's mask. It was found in his tomb. The(2)..... is gold, with blue lines between gold lines. Under his chin is a thin beard. There is also a(3)..... on the top of his head.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: (7)

Many birds migrate to and from Egypt, and across it, because of where it is in the world. North Africa is hotter than Europe, so in winter, many birds leave northern European countries and fly to Egypt and other warmer places. This means that lots of interesting birds migrate to Egypt, such as eagles, falcons, and swifts. Many water birds migrate to Egypt, too. You can often see large flocks of birds such

as pelicans near water, along the Red Sea and Mediterranean coasts, as well as on the Nile. These water birds often eat fish or plants that live in rivers, lakes, oases, and seas. Lake Qarun in Fayoum is a good place for them.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 The general idea of the text is about "……".

a) Bird Migration b) Hiking c) Go shopping d) Reading

2 Birds migrate in large …… .

a) cities b) flocks c) jobs d) places

B Answer the following questions:

3 What do water birds eat? ……

4 Where's Lake Qarun? ……

5 Summarize the text in two sentences. ……



Writing

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences: (1)

1 was – set – favorite – toy – My – a train. ……

2 take – environment – Eco-tourists – care – of the. ……

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets: (4)

1 Can you speak …… (quiet), please?

2 Mona …… (very) enjoys playing marbles.

7 Punctuate the following: (4)

1 we went to a museum in the city ……

2 What are you doing mona? ……

8 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements: (7)

"The Ras Mohammed National Park"

…… beach – dive ……

……

……

……

Listening

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: 4

1 Amina is in grade
a) five b) six c) three d) four

2 When Amina was little, she liked to play
a) games b) tennis c) football d) basketball

3 She was good at making up
a) teachers b) schools c) animals d) games

4 She also had a house.
a) doll's b) cat's c) dog's d) mouse's

Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: 1.5

1 A is the long nose of an elephant.
a) stall b) button c) trunk d) sail

2 The is the person who tells you the story.
a) character b) moral c) setting d) narrator

3 We food in the fridge to be fresh.
a) study b) sleep c) preserve d) mummify

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: 1.5

animal – happy – story – artifacts

Last summer, we went to the Museum of Ancient History. There were many interesting(1)..... to see. We were walking around when we found a room. The room had lots of(2)..... statues because animals were very important in their culture. We were very(3)..... .

4 Read the text and answer the questions: 7

I am Yousef. My favorite toy is the skateboard. I love going to the park and playing with my friends on Fridays. My skateboard is black with orange and green stickers on it. I have to wear my helmet and knee pads. It really hurts if you fall off a skateboard. I got my first skateboard when I was eight, and it was quite small. I don't use it at all now, because I have a bigger one.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 Yousef's skateboard is

a) orange b) black c) green d) red

2 He has to wear his to be safe.

a) hat b) knee c) helmet d) glasses

B Answer the following questions:

3 Where does Yousef love going?

4 When does he play with his friends?

5 When did Yousef get his first skateboard?

Writing

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences: (1)

1 books – The – on – shelves – are – the.

2 What – game – favorite – your – is?

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets: (4)

1 We enjoy (make) up stories.

2 I was (read) a book when my dad came.

7 Punctuate the following: (4)

1 what was the weather like

2 hazem was watching a football match yesterday evening

8 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements: (7)

"Ancient Egyptian artifacts"

..... preserve – certain materials

.....

.....

.....

Listening

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: 4

1 Hana loved playing with her old figures.
a) action b) train c) doll d) rollerblades
2 She made up lots of for her action figures.
a) hats b) food c) games d) stories
3 She didn't have
a) a train set b) action figures c) rollerblades d) a cuddly toy
4 Her sister had a big
a) doll's house b) cuddly toy c) marble d) skateboard

Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: 1.5

1 Gold is a valuable and metal.
a) durable b) liquid c) cheap d) dangerous
2 I can run very fast with my
a) stalls b) marbles c) rollerblades d) helmets
3 Goha is the main in the story.
a) massage b) moral c) character d) ending

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: 1.5

eco-tourism – close – ideal – open

People who go bird-watching in Egypt will have a lot to see. They mustn't get too(1)..... to the birds because they might fly away, but they can watch from a safe distance and take lots of photographs! Wildlife watching is(2)..... for people who respect nature, and(3)..... is a good way for people to do this.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: 7

Egypt is an amazing country. There are many historical places to visit, as well as stores, markets, and museums. People can go snorkeling in the Red Sea, go on desert safari, climb mountains, or sail on the Nile. So, tourism is important, but eco-tourism is becoming very popular, too. Eco-tourism is a way of traveling that doesn't damage the environment. It's more sustainable than traditional tourism. And it is designed to protect nature. People stay in simple accommodation, not large hotels, and they mustn't travel in ways that can cause lots of pollution.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 People can climb

a) stores b) mountains c) stairs d) markets

2 The underlined word "popular" means "..... " .

a) famous b) difficult c) old d) simple

B Answer the following questions:

3 What activities can people do in the Red Sea?

4 What is eco-tourism?

5 Summarize the text in two sentences.

Writing

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences: (1)

1 main – was – brave – very – character – The.

2 in – the – A man – France – found – message.

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets: (4)

1 The library is in front (off) the hospital.

2 Hazem was (watch) the football match when Egypt scored a goal.

7 Punctuate the following: (4)

1 there are lots of different habitats in egypt.

2 ahmed enjoyed playing football outside

8 Write an email of FIFTY (50) words about Goha's story to your friend Yassin. Your friend's email address is yassin@yahoo.com. Your name is Abdallah and your email address is abdallah@yahoo.com (7)

From :

To :

Subject :

.....

.....

.....

.....

Listening

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: 4

1 My friend Osama and I were playing in the
a) forest b) beach c) park d) school

2 The sun was
a) giving b) shining c) caring d) going

3 We were hoping to see animals and there.
a) games b) movies c) toys d) birds

4 They saw a little in the distance.
a) park b) school c) house d) mall

Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: 1.5

1 The Egyptian climate is good for preserving artifacts because
a) it's too hot b) it's hot and dry
c) it's wet and cold d) it's too cold

2 The person who tells a story is the
a) character b) son c) man d) narrator

3 Migrating birds fly very distances.
a) short b) long c) tall d) small

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: 1.5

tour – boats – amazing – food

Hi, I am Eslam. I am so excited because I'm going on a(1)..... to see the birds and animals which live near the water. I'm going there with my friends. We will travel along the river in small(2)....., and camp in tents at night. We hope to see lizards and turtles. I'm sure that it will be(3)..... .

4 Read the text and answer the questions: 7

My name is Adam. My father is a doctor, my mother is a teacher. Today is Friday. It's our weekend. We usually have a picnic on that day. We are in the park. There is green grass. I'm flying my kite. My sister is watching butterflies. We are very happy.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 They are in the park on

a) Sunday b) Thursday c) Monday d) Friday

2 I'm flying my

a) plane b) butterfly c) kite d) boat

B Answer the following questions:

3 Where are they today?

4 Who is playing cards?

5 What is Adam's sister doing?

Writing

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences: (1)

1 the story – is – the main – Who – character – in?

2 going – a – we're – tour – Next week, – on.

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets: (4)

1 This is a boring film. We don't like it (quite).

2 You (must) leave trash in the park.

7 Punctuate the following: (4)

1 what do migrating birds eat

2 The ancient egyptians traded with other countries.

8 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements: (7)

"My favorite game"

..... video games – board games

.....

.....

.....

Listening

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: 4

1 The Ancient Egyptians started using more than 5,000 years ago.
a) iron b) glass c) plastic d) wood

2 Some of their early iron was from
a) statues b) tombs c) meteorites d) museums

3 Ancient Egyptian made a dagger for Tutankhamun's tomb.
a) doctors b) teachers c) archaeologists d) craftsmen

4 Iron was more than gold because it was rarer.
a) delicious b) kind c) cheap d) precious

Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: 1.5

1 When you something, you love it very much.
a) dislike b) hate c) adore d) leave

2 A: What would you like to, sir? B: An apple juice, please.
a) eat b) drink c) sleep d) plant

3 He likes in the Red Sea.
a) snorkeling b) biking c) playing d) running

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: 1.5

castle – daughter – spend – rose

Many years ago, there lived a king called King Midas. He loved three things more than anything else: his(1)....., Marigold, his(2)..... garden, and gold. His favorite thing was to spend time in his garden with Marigold. But he also liked to look at all the gold in his(3)..... .

4 Read the text and answer the questions: 7

My name is Ali. When I was young, I had a cool train set. I loved playing with my train set and making the trains go fast! My sister Jana had a cool doll's house with lots of tiny furniture. My friend Hamdi had action figures, and they were awesome. My brother Ibrahim had a big collection of marbles. My cuddly toy was my favorite toy when I went to bed. I also found my rollerblades. I wanted to have a go on them, but they were too small.

A **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:**

1 Ali loved playing with his train and making the trains go fast.

a) set b) sit c) setting d) shapes

2 Jana had a cool house with lots of tiny furniture.

a) figure's b) train's c) toy's d) doll's

B **Answer the following questions:**

3 Who had a big collection of marbles?

4 When did Ali play with his cuddly toy?

5 Why couldn't Ali have a try on his rollerblades?

Writing

5 **Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:** (1)

1 to – is – next – the board – The calendar.

2 to – migrate – countries – other – Eagles.

6 **Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:** (4)

1 You (mustn't) respect nature.

2 Soha closed the window (quiet), as everyone was asleep.

7 **Punctuate the following:** (4)

1 the ancient Egyptians liked to use gold.

2 how often does tamer volunteer?

8 **Write a text of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements:** (7)

"Ways to be a good citizen"

..... neighbors – protect

.....

.....

.....

Listening

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: 4

1 Fareeda was born in in 1994.
a) Aswan b) Cairo c) Alexandria d) Luxor

2 Fareeda helped her mom buy her elder neighbors'
a) shopping b) present c) uniform d) money

3 Fareeda started school in 2006.
a) primary b) secondary c) college d) preparatory

4 She and a team of volunteers did a/an clean-up.
a) school b) beach c) office d) hospital

Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: 1.5

1 Many birds to find warmer weather in winter.
a) walk b) migrate c) stay d) sleep

2 My dad is a/an He works for a newspaper.
a) engineer b) carpenter c) vet d) journalist

3 I always wear a when I ride my bike to protect my head.
a) helmet b) belt c) sticker d) balloon

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: 1.5

games – bus – eat – house

Hi! I'm Ali. I visited my uncle last week. I went there by(1)..... . My uncle's(2)..... is near the sea. I had lunch with my cousin. We played computer(3)..... . We had a lot of fun. I am going to visit my grandfather next week.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: 7

Adel read a story about the lion that ran away from the zoo last week. He was scared. The lion opened the cage and ran when the zookeeper put the food. He imagined seeing it in the street, so he couldn't go outside his house. He stayed at home for a week. He didn't go to school or meet his friends. Suddenly at night he woke up to go to the bathroom. When he came back, he saw the lion sleeping in the bed. He shouted and cried a lot. His brother Ali wanted some fun, so he wore the mask of a lion. Adel was angry with him. He said, "Don't scare me again."

A **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:**

1 The general idea of the text is about "Adel was afraid because of the ".

a) cage b) lion c) street d) panda

2 The underlined verb "woke up" means

a) got up b) picked up c) cleaned up d) walked up

B **Answer the following questions:**

3 How did the lion run away from the zoo?

4 Why did Adel wake up at night?

5 What did Adel say to his brother?

Writing

5 **Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:** (1)

1 walking – king – around – The – the castle – was.

2 enjoy – in – the park – Did – playing – you?

6 **Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:** (4)

1 Can you speak (quiet), please?

2 You (mustn't) listen to your teacher.

7 **Punctuate the following:** (4)

1 egypt is an amazing country

2 if she's thirsty, she will drink some water

8 **Write a text of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements:** (7)

"My favorite sport"

..... football – friends – club – school – tennis

.....

.....

.....

Listening

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: 4

1 My friend Ali and I were playing in the forest
a) yesterday b) last week c) an hour ago d) recently

2 It was a lovely and the sun was shining.
a) evening b) afternoon c) night d) morning

3 We were hoping to see and birds.
a) friends b) animals c) books d) neighbors

4 We suddenly saw a little in the distance.
a) bird b) deer c) bear d) house

Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: 1.5

1 We can go safari in the
a) desert b) sea c) pitch d) school

2 A is a place where an animal or a plant lives.
a) tomb b) statue c) bottle d) habitat

3 is the system of how the country's money and goods are produced and used.
a) Fishing b) Hunting c) Economy d) Fighting

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: 1.5

books – donate – starting up – help out

I love reading very much. I have lots of(1)..... at home. I decided to(2)..... in the kindergarten class by reading to the children. We're(3)..... a project where they think of their own stories next week. I'm looking forward to that.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: 7

Many birds migrate to and from Egypt and across it because of where it is in the world. North Africa is hotter than Europe, so in winter, many birds leave northern European countries and fly to Egypt and other warmer places. This means that lots of interesting birds migrate to Egypt, such as eagles, falcons, and swifts. Many water birds migrate to Egypt, too. These birds often eat fish or plants that live in rivers, lakes, oases, and seas.

A **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:**

1 The general idea of the text is about

a) migration of birds b) Egypt c) Africa and Europe d) weather

2 North Africa is than Europe.

a) colder b) cooler c) hotter d) bigger

B **Answer the following questions:**

3 Why do many birds leave Europe in winter?

4 What do water birds eat?

5 Mention three examples of birds that migrate to Egypt.

Writing

5 **Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:** (1)

1 donated – our – toys – Parents – lots of.

.....

2 is – between – The book – and – the desk – the bench.

.....

6 **Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:** (4)

1 You must (listening) to your teacher carefully.

2 Omar can run (quick). He always wins.

7 **Punctuate the following:** (4)

1 where does Hugo live

2 i thought hide and seek was fun

8 **Write an email of FIFTY (50) words to your friend Sally to tell her about the games you are good at. Your name is Clara and your email address is clara@gmail.com. Your friend's email address is sally@gmail.com** (7)

From :

To :

Subject :

.....

.....

.....

.....

Listening

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: 4

1 Marwa likes studying and knowing their meanings.
a) adverbs b) proverbs c) morals d) rules

2 The book which was about proverbs was
a) sad b) amazing c) bored d) sad

3 Don't count your before they hatch.
a) goats b) cats c) chickens d) cows

4 "Birds of a feather flock together" means that people like doing the same things.
a) different b) similar c) a lot d) many

Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: 1.5

1 Parents should their kids.
a) help out b) look forward c) look after d) start up

2 Goha's stories have a that he wants to teach us.
a) narrator b) setting c) moral d) character

3 When you do something new, you are
a) bored b) creative c) annoyed d) unhappy

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: 1.5

riding – hiding – difficult – skateboard

When I was young, I thought hide and seek was fun. I was very good at(1)....., so I could hide for a very long time. I also liked playing hopscotch with my sister. We used colored chalk to draw squares. My sister liked skipping, too, but I wasn't very good at it. Some skipping games are so(2)..... ! I enjoyed(3)..... my bike more.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: 7

Ancient Egypt was one of the strongest economies in the world. You need to look at the artifacts in museums to see that this is true. Trade with other countries helped the Ancient Egyptians develop their economy. The Ancient Egyptians bought and sold many things to different countries. One of the most interesting things they traded was metal. They learned that metal was harder than stone. They used it to make tools and weapons, which they used to hunt on the land and grow things like food.

A **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:**

1 Ancient Egypt was one of the economies in the world.

a) weakest b) strongest c) smallest d) rarest

2 The underlined pronoun "it" refers to

a) stone b) tool c) weapon d) metal

B **Answer the following questions:**

3 What did the Ancient Eygptians buy and sell to other countries?

4 What did the Ancient Egyptians learn about metal?

5 What did the Ancient Egyptians use tools and weapons for?



Writing

5 **Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:** (1)

1 popular – Cats – in – pets – Ancient – Egypt – are.

.....

2 play – me – want to – games – Do – with – you?

.....

6 **Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:** (4)

1 My house in (next) of the school.

2 They didn't enjoy playing skipping (really).

7 **Punctuate the following:** (4)

1 when did ancient egyptians use iron?

2 there are lots of different habitats in egypt.

8 **Write a text of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements:** (7)

"Cats in Ancient Egypt"

..... keep them safe – so popular

.....

.....

.....

Listening

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: (4)

1 I went to the Museum of Ancient
a) Art b) History c) Music d) World

2 The museum was full of Ancient Egyptian
a) artifacts b) people c) books d) buildings

3 Mr. Ashraf was our at the museum.
a) manager b) doctor c) teacher d) guide

4 We our visit to the museum.
a) enjoyed b) forgot c) wrote d) read

Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: (1.5)

1 The is the last part of the story.
a) setting b) title c) singing d) ending

2 are homes for birds.
a) Caves b) Tents c) Nests d) Boats

3 We should our friends and help them.
a) support b) shout c) fight d) scare

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: (1.5)

coast – message – sailing – come

My name is Maria. I live in London. I live on the(1)..... . I love(2)..... my boat. Last week, I was sailing when I saw something in the water – a(3)..... in a bottle! That was really amazing. My favorite things are my boat, mangoes, and the color green. I enjoy reading short stories.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: (7)

My name is Tarek. I live in Luxor. My father works with computers. He teaches me how to use computers. My mother is a teacher. My parents never work on the weekend. We often go outside. I like to play games with my cousins and my friends at the park. My favorite game is hide and seek. We run fast and try to hide. Sometimes, we draw squares to play hopscotch. My cousin Amr is really good at skipping. It's very interesting, but it's difficult, too.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 Tarek's father works with

a) computers b) soil c) books d) plants

2 The underlined word "really" means

a) little b) small c) very d) tiny

B Answer the following questions:

3 Where does Tarek live?

4 What does Tarek's father teach him?

5 How do Tarek and his friends play hopscotch?

Writing

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences: (1)

1 tennis – so – I – exciting – think – is.

.....

2 university – the – is – studying – She – at.

.....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets: (4)

1 The calendar is next (of) the poster.

2 You (must) leave the trash in the park.

7 Punctuate the following: (4)

1 i love visiting the zoo

2 how did they find the message

8 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements: (7)

"Volunteering"

..... socialize – confidence

.....

.....

.....

Listening

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: (4)

1 The Ras Mohammed National Park is on the Red
a) Garden b) Desert c) Sea d) Lake

2 It's famous for its water.
a) amazing b) warm c) bad d) hot

3 I saw coral reefs and lots of brightly colored
a) falcons b) fish c) birds d) snakes

4 It was a great place for bird _
a) watching b) eating c) listening d) looking

Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: (1.5)

1 A/An "..... " is a person who looks after sheep.
a) dentist b) engineer c) shepherd d) teacher

2 Eagles and falcons are
a) birds b) insects c) pests d) humans

3 The is the person who tells the story.
a) character b) moral c) narrator d) builder

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: (1.5)

preserve – climate – School – sink

I went to the Museum of Ancient History last week. I met some students who are at Egyptian Eagles Primary(1)..... . I learned about Ancient Egyptians artifacts. The(2)..... is hot and dry in Egypt, that's why many artifacts aren't damaged by cold and wet weather. This helps to(3)..... the artifacts. I knew that the Ancient Egyptians built the Pyramids with granite, a very hard and durable stone.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: (7)

Hassan's uncle lives in a small town by the sea. The beach near his house is quiet and beautiful. Last summer, when Hassan visited his uncle, he went to the beach with his cousin. They had fun time there. They swam and surfed. Hassan was building a sandcastle when he found a glass bottle. He decided to throw the bottle into the sea, but his cousin asked him to wait. He said that they could write a message and put it in the bottle. They wrote a message about their favorite things.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 Hassan's uncle lives in a small

a) coast b) town c) village d) field

2 The underlined pronoun "there" refers to the

a) town b) summer c) beach d) house

B Answer the following questions:

3 How is the beach?

4 What did Hassan and his cousin do at the beach?

5 What did Hassan and his cousin write about?

Writing

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences: (1)

1 do – play – hide – When – seek – you – and?

.....

2 farmers – a lot – produce – Egyptian – grain – of.

.....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets: (4)

1 She was (go) home when she met Amira.

2 I (travel) to Cairo last year.

7 Punctuate the following: (4)

1 do you want to read it

2 the villagers came to save the sheep

8 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements: (7)

"Desert habitat"

Which animals can you see there? – What is the weather like in the desert?

.....

.....

.....

Listening

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: 4

1 Youssef is in grade
a) two b) four c) six d) nine

2 They started a project at
a) hospital b) school c) park d) office

3 People from the community to help in the garden.
a) volunteered b) had c) cooked d) paid

4 They grow strawberries, oranges, and
a) bananas b) pineapples c) mangoes d) apples

Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: 1.5

1 The of the story is "Never be selfish".
a) end b) narrator c) moral d) setting

2 Video games are great when they are
a) boring b) creative c) easy d) useless

3 Don't count your before they hatch.
a) chickens b) monkeys c) feathers d) cars

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: 1.5

riding – sister – hiding – skateboard

When I was young, I thought hide and seek was fun. I was very good at(1)..... so I could hide for a very long time. I also liked playing hopscotch with my(2)..... . We used colored chalk to draw squares. My sister liked skipping, too, but I wasn't very good at it. Some skipping games are so difficult! I enjoyed(3)..... my bike more.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: 7

The Ancient Egyptians traded with other countries, and metal was one thing they traded. They first found metal in rocks. Metal was harder than stone, and they could melt and form it into different shapes. They used metal to make tools and weapons so that they could hunt on the land and grow food. Gold was a popular metal for making jewelry and art to sell. Silver was also used, but it was rare. Trade with other countries helped the Ancient Egyptian economy to develop.

A **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:**

1 The general idea of the text is about " in Ancient Egypt".

a) Food b) Metal c) Clothes d) Schools

2 The underlined word "popular" means

a) hard b) cheap c) unknown d) famous

B **Answer the following questions:**

3 How did the Ancient Egyptians use metal?

4 Why was trade in Ancient Egypt useful?

5 Summarize the text in two sentences.

Writing

5 **Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:** (1)

1 should – animal – We – habitats – protect.

.....

2 with – She – friends – her – plays – outside.

.....

6 **Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:** (4)

1 Did the Ancient Egyptians (kept) animals as pets?

2 I bought a flower to (surprises) my mother.

7 **Punctuate the following:** (4)

1 what can you do to help your friends

2 she didn't arrive on time

8 **Write a text of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements:** (7)

"Eco-tourism"

environment – accommodation

.....

.....

.....

.....

Listening

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: 4

1 I wanted to make
a) tea with milk b) salatet zabadee c) hot chocolate d) cake

2 I took the recipe from my
a) grandma b) grandpa c) mom d) dad

3 Mix the and the mint in a bowl.
a) sugar b) soup c) yogurt d) tea

4 Add if you like.
a) salt b) sugar c) coffee d) mint

Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: 1.5

1 The hungry bird tried many times to catch a
a) wolf b) worm c) person d) train

2 You should older people's advice.
a) hide b) forget c) respect d) leave

3 He is good at because he can hide very well.
a) hide and seek b) skipping c) chess d) hopscotch

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: 1.5

pictures – sad – donated – toys

My little sister was sick last month, and she was in a hospital. She's better now, but when we visited her, she was(1)..... because she didn't like being there. I thought it would be nice to do something for children who are sick. My friends and I painted lots of big(2)..... of flowers, animals, beaches, and trees. Our parents(3)..... lots of toys, too. We took them and the paintings to the hospital to make the rooms look nicer.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: 7

Egypt is an ideal place for people who go wildlife watching. Egypt is home to about 450 different species of birds. People come from all over the world on vacations to see them. For example, Siwa Oasis is an excellent place to see a large number of migrating water birds. It is an important habitat for these birds. So, people must protect it. Tourists can watch the birds from a safe distance and take lots of pictures, but they mustn't get too close to them. We all must respect nature.

A **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:**

1 The underline word "ideal" means

a) perfect b) bad c) simple d) different

2 Oasis is an important habitat for migrating water birds.

a) Cairo b) Giza c) Siwa d) Sohag

B **Answer the following questions:**

3 How many species of birds are there in Egypt?

4 Why do people come to Egypt from all over the world on vacations?

5 Summarize the text in two sentences.

Writing

5 **Put the word(s) in the correct order to make sentences:** (1)

1 did – find – What – you – the box – in?

.....

2 are – Goha's – very – stories – popular.

.....

6 **Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:** (4)

1 We use the handle to (opening) the fridge.

2 She hates (wake) up early.

7 **Punctuate the following:** (4)

1 who doesn't like swimming

2 i played with my action figure

8 **Write a text of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements:** (7)

"Your favorite toy"

..... helmet – knee pads

.....

.....

.....

Listening

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: 4

1 My favorite toy was my
a) rollerblade b) skiing c) skateboard d) roller coaster

2 I loved going to the and playing there.
a) school b) hospital c) bank d) park

3 I had to wear a helmet and pads.
a) knee b) hand c) foot d) stomach

4 I got my first skateboard when I was
a) eight b) seven c) ten d) two

Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: 1.5

1 He is rich and has a good job. He is
a) foolish b) failure c) successful d) terrible

2 She is very She always comes up with new ideas.
a) terrible b) bored c) creative d) bad

3 The of the story is "You can't make everyone happy."
a) moral b) book c) ring d) character

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: 1.5

message – desert – market – sail

I live in Alexandria. It is an amazing place. There are lots to do and see here. I usually go to the(1)..... with my mother to buy our food. I enjoy living here as I live on the coast and I always(2)..... my boat. Last week, I saw something in the water. I found a(3)..... in a bottle. I read it happily because it was for me.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: 7

My name is Ali. I'm a student at a primary school. My father works as a doctor. He works at a big hospital in Cairo. Last week, my sister had a stomach ache. Then, we went to the hospital quickly. She stayed there for three days. I thought it would be nice to do something for children who are sick. My friends and I painted a lot of big pictures of flowers. Our parents donated lots of toys, too. We took them and the paintings to the hospital to make the rooms look nicer.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 Ali's father is a/an

a) nurse b) dentist c) engineer d) doctor

2 Ali's sister had a/an

a) headache b) stomach ache c) toothache d) earache

B Answer the following questions:

3 How long did Ali's sister stay in the hospital?

4 What did Ali and his friends do for the sick children?

5 What did Ali's parents donate?

Writing

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences: (1)

1 neighbor – always – is – kind – us – My – to.

.....

2 needs – buy – to – She – money – a dress.

.....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets: (4)

1 When she (gets) an email, she was texting her friend.

2 They are (well) players.

7 Punctuate the following: (4)

1 have you started the project yet

2 what were you doing

8 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements: (7)

"Bird migration"

migrate – weather

.....

.....

.....

Listening

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: 4

1 Magda liked playing when she was younger.
a) home b) outdoors c) alone d) indoors

2 She played hopscotch in the
a) station b) school c) house d) park

3 They used different colored to draw squares.
a) marker b) chalk c) pen d) pencil

4 Magda hurt her while she was playing.
a) finger b) arm c) ankle d) hand

Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: 1.5

1 We use a to pick up the trash from the beach.
a) camera b) multi-grip c) grabber d) joystick

2 are made of iron.
a) Weapons b) Cheese c) Cakes d) Eggs

3 To means to be more successful than someone in a game.
a) beat b) buy c) lose d) give

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: 1.5

wolf – sheep – joke – villagers

One day, Peter was lonely and bored. He wanted to have fun. So, he shouted "wolf" and the(1)..... came to save the sheep. He said there was no(2)..... and it was a joke. Later that week, a real wolf appeared. Peter shouted "wolf", but no one came. The wolf ate the(3)..... and Peter was very sorry.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: 7

Many years ago, Goha went to the market with his son and the donkey. The man and his son took turns riding the donkey because the journey was long. When the son rode the donkey, the people they passed said that the father should ride the donkey. When Goha rode the donkey, they said that he should let his son take a turn. Then they said that the donkey must be tired. So, Goha and his son carried the donkey. Goha wants to teach us that you can't make everyone happy.

A **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:**

1 The journey to the market was

a) long b) nice c) fine d) sad

2 The said that the donkey must be tired.

a) Goha b) people c) son d) farmer

B **Answer the following questions:**

3 Who went with Goha to the market?

4 What happened at the end?

5 What does Goha want to teach us?

Writing

5 **Put the word(s) in the correct order to make sentences:** (1)

1 grow – can – and – plants – flowers – We.

.....

2 you – want – Do – play – to – a game?

.....

6 **Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:** (4)

1 (Are) they at school yesterday?

2 We like (play) football at school.

7 **Punctuate the following:** (4)

1 are the stories the same in every country

2 egypt is an amazing country

8 **Write a text of FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements:** (7)

"Pros and cons of video games"

..... problem – creative

.....

.....

.....

Exam 1 — 60

A) Language Functions

1 Read and complete the dialogue: — 10

characters – doing – narrator – review – clever

Hana : What are you(1).....?
Doha : I'm reading a(2)..... of one of Goha's stories.
Hana : His stories are both funny and(3)....., aren't they?
Doha : Yes. And I think he is a great(4)....., too.
Hana : Me, too. I also love the details he gives about his(5)..... .

B) Vocabulary and Structures

2 Circle the odd word and replace it with a correct one: — 10

1 granite – train set – gold – glass (.....)
2 cuddly toys – successful – marbles – action figures (.....)
3 next to – happen – in front of – between (.....)
4 similar – catch – sensible – careful (.....)
5 pelican – Europe – kingfisher – swift (.....)

3 Choose the correct answer: — 10

1 A/An (falcon – duck – ibis) is a bird that represented wisdom in ancient Egypt.
2 When something is (successful – brilliant – made up), it's thought or invented.
3 The (moral – narrator – character) is the lesson you learn from a story.
4 (Sentences – Proverbs – Stories) have another meaning as well as their exact meaning.
5 (Students – Volunteers – Parents) do a job or an activity without taking money for it.
6 Rana (meets – met – meeting) her friends at the park yesterday.
7 What (will happen – happened – happening) if you win the prize?
8 Mom (cooks – cooking – was cooking) dinner when the guests arrived.
9 You must (listen – listens – listened) carefully to your parents.
10 Manar likes (read – reading – reads) science fiction stories.

C) Reading Comprehension

4 Read the text and answer the questions: 10

The Ancient Egyptians started using iron more than 5,000 years ago. Before iron, they worked with copper and bronze. Some of their early iron was from meteorites. Ancient Egyptian craftsmen made a famous dagger for Tutankhamun's tomb from a meteorite. They also mined iron from the ground. But they found it quite difficult to use because it needs a very hot fire to melt, which often wasn't possible. Ancient Egyptians thought iron was special because they believed it came from the sky.

A Answer the following questions:

1 When did Ancient Egyptians start using iron?

2 Where did Ancient Egyptian mine iron?

3 Why was iron difficult to use?

B Choose the correct answer:

4 Some of their early iron was from (the ground – meteorites – the Nile River).

5 Ancient Egyptians thought iron was (useless – expensive – special).

D) Writing

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences: 10

1 went – Habiba – to – buy – to the – supermarket – groceries.

.....

2 the – My sister – read – email – carefully

.....

3 office – next to – The – is – elevator – the.

.....

4 come – does – When – your – father – home?

.....

5 evening – What – you – were – doing – yesterday?

.....

6 Write a text of Five sentences using the following guiding elements: 10

"Fareeda Hassan"

born – elder – 2006 – charity – university

.....

.....

.....

.....

Exam 2 — 60

A) Language Functions

1 Read and complete the dialogue: — 10

find – weekend – toys – made – action

Ali : Did you visit your grandma on the(1).....?
Adel : Yes, I did. I found a box of my old(2)..... .
Ali : What did you(3)..... there?
Adel : There was an(4)..... figure. I loved playing with it.
Ali : Me, too! I(5)..... up lots of games for them.

B) Vocabulary and Structures

2 Circle the odd word and replace it with a correct one: — 10

1 baboons – monkeys – adored – hippos (.....)
2 hiding – really – skipping – playing (.....)
3 wrote – found – sent – pass (.....)
4 sustainable – historical – ideal – protect (.....)
5 quiet – badly – kindly – patiently (.....)

3 Choose the correct answer: — 10

1 The (ending – setting – characters) are the people or animals in a story.
2 You should wear a (knee pad – helmet – sticker) to protect your head.
3 Ancient Egyptians used (clay – gold – granite) to build the Pyramids.
4 When something is (similar – real – careful), it happens and it's true.
5 We need to (participate – donate – support) people in our community.
6 Nadia (really – very – at all) liked flying colorful kites.
7 A: When (does – do – did) they meet? B: A year ago.
8 A: Where is the coat? B: It's (in – between – on) the bed.
9 Hany continued (plays – playing – played) tennis until he was twenty.
10 If my cousins visit me, we (will go – goes – going) to the city park together.

C) Reading Comprehension

4 Read the text and answer the questions: — 10

Egypt is an amazing country. There are many historical places to visit, as well as stores, markets, and museums. People can go snorkeling in the Red Sea, go on a

desert safari, climb mountains, or sail on the Nile. So, tourism is important – but eco-tourism is becoming very popular, too. Eco-tourism is a way of traveling that doesn't damage the environment. It's more sustainable than traditional tourism, and it is designed to protect nature. People stay in simple accommodation not large hotels, and they mustn't travel in ways that cause lots of pollution.

A Answer the following questions:

1 What can people do in Egypt?

2 Where can you sail in Egypt?

3 What is eco-tourism?

B Choose the correct answer:

4 Eco-tourism is designed to protect the (country – environment – pollution).

5 People in eco-tourism often stay in (big hotels – the deserts – simple accommodation).

D) Writing

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences: 10

1 mustn't – They – stay – at – up – late – night.

.....

2 to the – bazaar – We – went – to buy – a gift.

.....

3 did – last – Where – you – travel – weekend?

.....

4 happened – What – he – was – playing – when?

.....

5 didn't – Marwa – listening – to music – like – at all.

.....

6 Write a text of Five sentences using the following guiding elements: 10

"My favorite story"

Goha – characters – countryside – ending – moral

.....

.....

.....

Exam 3 — 60

(A) Reading

1 Read and complete the dialogue: — 10

took – family – went – have – go

Nadia : Hello! Did you(1)..... a nice weekend?

Mona : Hello! Yes, I did. I(2)..... to Al-Azhar Park.

Nadia : Who did you(3)..... with?

Mona : I went with my(4)..... .

Nadia : What did you do there?

Mona : I played in the park and(5)..... many pictures. It was great.

(B) Writing

2 Circle the odd word and replace it with a correct one: — 10

1 hot – cold – weather – dry (.....)

2 became – feed – kept – grew (.....)

3 and – but – because – has (.....)

4 eagle – falcon – train – swift (.....)

5 sing – visiting – writing – reading (.....)

3 Choose the correct answer: — 10

1 This ring is expensive. It is made of (clay – glass – gold).

2 (Were – Was – Did) you at school yesterday?

3 My sister and I played with a (dull – doll – dug)'s house.

4 I prefer (reading – to read – read) books to watching TV.

5 She doesn't like playing tennis (quite – really – at all).

6 Mom (was cooking – cooking – cooks) dinner when my father came home.

7 The (setting – narrator – ending) is the person who tells you a story.

8 I like games where I can solve (bricks – friends – problems) or do something exciting.

9 A (careful – careless – lazy) person tries hard not to make mistakes.

10 We (should – mustn't – must) swim here because there may be a crocodile.

C) Reading Comprehension

4 Read the text and answer the questions: (10)

Huda wants to build a birdhouse. She gets some wood. She gets some (1)nails and paint. Her mom helps too. She gets a (2)saw and a (3)hammer. She cuts some wood and joins them together. Huda uses her pencil and ruler and draws her birdhouse. Huda and her mother build it together. Then they hang it up on a tree. A bird goes into the birdhouse. A second bird goes in. A third bird goes in. A fourth bird goes in! Huda and her mom look at each other. A lot of birds go in the birdhouse, so they need a bigger one.

(1) مسامير (2) منشار (3) شاكوش

A Answer the following questions:

1 What tools does Huda's mom get?

2 Where do they put the birdhouse?

3 Why do they need a bigger house?

B Choose the correct answer:

4 The underlined word "it" refers to (the bird – the birdhouse – the pencil).

5 (Three – Four – Five) birds go in the birdhouse.

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences: (10)

1 bought – They – car – a new.

2 was – My – toy – a train set – favorite.

3 football – think – I – so – is – exciting.

4 a pair – There – shoes – is – brown – of.

5 get – you – up – Why – late – did?

6 Write a text of Five sentences using the following guiding elements: (10)

"A visit to the Pyramids"

last week – my friends – camels – tourists – happy

.....

.....

.....

Exam 4 — 60

(A) Reading

1 Read and complete the dialogue: — 10

Where – community – volunteer – fruit – grow

Mona : Why do you want to(1).....?

Arwa : I want to help my(2)..... .

Mona :(3)..... are you going to volunteer?

Arwa : I am going to volunteer in the vegetable garden.

Mona : What are you going to(4)..... in the garden?

Arwa : I am going to grow vegetables and(5)..... .

(B) Writing

2 Circle the odd word and replace it with a correct one: — 10

1 real – worm – ideal – simple (.....)

2 hiking – snorkeling – sailing – bring (.....)

3 respect – and – damage – pollute (.....)

4 clay – glass – iron – have (.....)

5 board – bored – boring – excited (.....)

3 Choose the correct answer: — 10

1 Eco-tourism is more (sustainable – worse – awful – harmful) than traditional tourism.

2 A (camera – stick – button – handle) is something you press to make something happen.

3 I like to (close – collect – spend – socialize) and make friends at school.

4 We mustn't tell (good – true – untrue – exciting) stories.

5 She wants to send a (present – book – mail – reply) to her friend's message.

6 My father (don't – isn't – didn't – doesn't) travel abroad last year.

7 Cars (are – do – were – was) loud in the past.

8 They (didn't – really – so – very) enjoyed riding their bikes. It was great fun.

9 The dogs (wasn't – isn't – weren't – aren't) sleeping in the garden yesterday evening.

10 If it (don't – aren't – isn't – doesn't) rain, we'll go to the beach.

C) Reading Comprehension

4 Read the text and answer the questions: (10)

Fareeda Hassan was born in Alexandria in 1994. As a child, Fareeda helped her mom buy her elder neighbors' shopping. In 2006, she participated in her first volunteer event. She and a team of volunteers did a beach clean-up. In 2012, Fareeda went to university to study social sciences. Here, she organized a fundraising event to raise money for a new playground. In 2020, she led a "Youth Give Back" project in six cities in Egypt. It was so successful that she won the "2020 Community Worker" award. Today, she runs a charity for children.

A Answer the following questions:

1 When did Fareeda Hassan participate in her first volunteer event?

2 What did she do to raise money for a new playground?

3 Which project did Fareeda lead in 2020?

B Choose the correct answer:

4 Fareeda started her first volunteer event in (1994 – 2006 – 2012 – 2020).

5 Fareeda organized a fundraising event to raise (clothes – toys – money – books) for a new playground.

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences: (10)

1 waste – Reduce – help – and – environment – the.

2 you – Why – surfing – do – dislike?

3 main – was – brave – very – character – The.

4 to – migrate – continents – other – Eagles.

5 did – message – How – the – find – they?

6 Write a text of Five sentences using the following guiding elements: (10)

"Volunteering"

socialize – confidence – people – help – community

Exam 5 (60)

(A) Reading

1 Read and complete the dialogue: (10)

durable – use – Pyramids – visit – granite

Ali : What place did your parents(1)..... yesterday?

Sameh : They visited the(2)..... .

Ali : What did the Ancient Egyptians make the Pyramids from?

Sameh : They made them from(3)..... .

Ali : Why did they(4)..... gold for artifacts?

Sameh : Because it was valuable and(5)..... .

(B) Writing

2 Circle the odd word and replace it with a correct one: (10)

1 pelican – weather – flamingo – falcon (.....)
2 iron – silver – mirror – bronze (.....)
3 tomb – leave – look – have (.....)
4 marbles – rollerblades – action figures – iron (.....)
5 behind – in – under – climate (.....)

3 Choose the correct answer: (10)

1 The hungry bird tried to catch a (stone – worm – bus – train).
2 When she was crying, her mom (hugged – forgot – hid – climbed) her kindly.
3 To (participate – volunteer – rule – control) is to do a job and not take any money for it.
4 He is good at (climbing – hide and seek – chess – hopscotch) game because he can hide in different places.
5 The (proverb – photography – migration – accommodation) is somewhere you stay.
6 You (must – mustn't – must to – mustn't to) respect your parents.
7 The turtle walks (slow – slowly – slower than – slowest).
8 My uncle is a carpenter. He (makes – making – made – make) a beautiful chair yesterday.
9 Ali (play – plays – played – playing) hopscotch last week.
10 The shop is in front (of – at – into – off) the cinema.

C) Reading Comprehension

4 Read the text and answer the questions: (10)

Last summer, we went to a museum in the city. There were so many interesting artifacts to see. My brother and I were walking around when we found a room that had lots of animal statues. The Ancient Egyptians made lots of animal statues because animals were very important in their culture. First, we saw different statues in gold and silver. Then we saw some in clay, stone, and granite, too. My favorite was a small snake made of metal. My brother Ali liked a gold falcon with blue glass eyes. There were lots of cat statues made of brightly colored stone, too. The Ancient Egyptians adored cats. They believed that cats kept them safe.

A Answer the following questions:

1 When did the writer go to the museum?

2 Why did the Ancient Egyptians make lots of animal statues?

3 What was the writer's favorite statue?

B Choose the correct answer:

4 There were so many interesting (ruins – artifacts – metals – stone) to see in the museum.

5 The writer's brother liked a gold (falcon – insect – eagle – cow) with blue glass eyes.

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences: (10)

1 artifacts – used – Egyptians – The Ancient – for – gold.

2 shopping – Omar – was – parents – with – his.

3 night – finished – homework – my – I – last.

4 weekend – games – played – We – many – last.

5 can – go – People – on – watching – wildlife – vacation.

6 Write a text of Five sentences using the following guiding elements: (10)

"My favorite activities"

wildlife – snorkeling – hiking – underwater – photos

.....

.....

.....

Exam 1 محافظة الجيزة- إدارة العمرانية

35

Reading

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: 10

1 My friend was a picture when I knocked on the door.
a) draw b) drawing c) drew d) draws

2 If I buy a new book, we will it together.
a) read b) reads c) reading d) is reading

3 The lesson you learn from a story is called the
a) setting b) beginning c) moral d) oral

4 Peter is a He looks after the sheep.
a) teacher b) doctor c) shepherd d) wolf

5 You need to be more and avoid making such silly mistakes.
a) real b) late c) sensible d) similar

6 He doesn't like playing chess. He plays it
a) well b) badly c) easily d) happily

7 Egyptian farmers produce a lot of
a) gray b) grain c) games d) fish

8 Lara and Dareen are twins. They look very
a) sensible b) similar c) careful d) useful

9 You mustn't the monuments, please.
a) touching b) touches c) are touching d) touch

10 They travel to Aswan last year.
a) don't b) doesn't c) didn't d) wasn't

2 Read the text and answer the questions: 8

My name is Sara, and I live in a beautiful city. I was born in Alexandria. I enjoyed studying science and decided to become a scientist when I grew up. I worked hard and studied well to join the university in Alexandria. There I learned how to use science to look after the environment and Egypt's culture. I started studying ways for villages to clean dirty water in a natural way and to recycle used water. I did a project which could help to stop water pollution.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 Sara was born in
a) Cairo b) Luxor c) Alexandria d) Aswan

2 She decided to be a
a) doctor b) scientist c) gardener d) nurse

3 She learned at this university.
a) math b) science c) English d) Arabic

4 She did a project which could help to stop pollution.
a) air b) noise c) water d) map

Writing

3 Choose the correct form of the following sentences from a, b, or c: 6

1 is – a hospital – house – in front of – your – There.
a) There is a hospital in front of your house.
b) Is a hospital in front of your there house.
c) A hospital in front of house there your is.

2 did – she – What – weekend – do – last?
a) She do what last did weekend?
b) What did she do last weekend?
c) What do she last did weekend?

4 Reorder the following scrambled sentences to form a meaningful paragraph from a, b, c, or d: 8

1 They bought tickets. 1- ()
2 They returned home at six. 2- ()
3 My sister went to the park with her friends. 3- ()
4 They played hide and seek. 4- ()

5 Choose the correct punctuated sentence from a, b, or c: 3

my name is rose

a) my name is rose.
b) My name is Rose.
c) my name is Rose.

Reading

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: (5)

1 The is a person who tells the story.
a) character b) father c) narrator d) moral

2 This stone is very hard, it is
a) soft b) durable c) dry d) cold

3 Eman a large amount of money to a charity.
a) borrowed b) took c) donated d) trained

4 A is a special tool like a knife used as a weapon.
a) rock b) dagger c) sheet d) tomb

5 Ancient Egyptians loved specially falcons and ibises.
a) lions b) birds c) metals d) plants

6 I like making games for my action figures.
a) up b) on c) in d) at

7 My brother is really good at and seek.
a) run b) skip c) hide d) hop

8 Hazem watching football match when his father came.
a) is b) has c) was d) were

9 We enjoy stories.
a) read b) reads c) reading d) to read

10 If I out tonight, I will go to the cinema.
a) go b) goes c) going d) went

2 Read the text and answer the questions: (8)

Bicycles are important for young people and adults. People use them to go from one place to another. They use them for fun and for work. The history of the bicycle is interesting. In 1818, they had no pedals. The pedals were added in 1839. They made the bicycles move faster than the old ones. Cycling is now an exciting sport and a mean of transport. Using the bicycle to go to school is a clean way for the environment. Riding bicycles keeps the air clean. It doesn't need a big space to park. So a lot of people in crowded cities prefer riding them.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 The general idea of the text is about the

a) cars b) bicycles c) motorbikes d) buses

2 The underlined pronoun "They" refers to the

a) people b) scientists c) bicycles d) pedals

3 Cycling is a way for the environment.

a) clay b) dirty c) clean d) bad

4 A lot of people in crowded cites prefer bicycles.

a) reading b) riding c) eating d) drinking

Writing

3 Choose the correct form of the following sentences from a, b, or c: (6)

1 would – What – like – you – know – to?

a) What would you like to know?

b) What know you would like to?

c) What would you like know to?

2 was – playing – I – the sand – on.

a) I was on playing the sand.

b) I was playing on the sand.

c) I playing was on the sand.

4 Choose the correct order of the following scrambled sentences to form a meaningful paragraph from a, b, c, or d: (8)

a)
- Yesterday was a holiday.
- I went to the cinema.
- I saw an adventure film.
- It was a nice film.

b)
- Yesterday was a holiday.
- It went to the cinema.
- It was a nice film.
- I saw an adventure film.

c)
- Yesterday was a holiday.
- I saw an adventure film.
- I went to the cinema.
- It was a nice film.

d)
- Yesterday was a holiday.
- It was a nice film.
- I went to the cinema.
- I saw an adventure film.

5 Choose the correct punctuated sentence from a, b, or c: (3)

- goha is a great narrator

a) GOHA IS A GREAT NARRATOR.

b) Goha is a great narrator.

c) Goha is a great narrator?

Tapescripts

يحتوى هذا الجزء على إجابات نصوص الاستماع الخاصة بالكتاب.

UNIT 7

Lesson 1

We have many artifacts in Egypt because of the hot, dry climate. So artifacts aren't damaged by cold or wet weather. The Ancient Egyptians used certain materials that could last a long time. They used granite to build the Pyramids. They also used gold a lot because it's valuable. But it was also durable.

Lesson 3

One night, the king was walking in his garden when he tripped over something on the ground. It was a strange-looking goat. It looked very sick. King Midas was a kind man, so he took the goat into his castle and helped it until it felt better. To thank the king, the goat made his wish come true. Everything the king touched turned into gold.

Test Yourself

Talia and Tarek were at the Museum of Ancient History last week. Dr. Fayez was their guide. He told them that we have many artifacts in Egypt that are made of different materials. The Pyramids, for example, were built with granite. Pots in ancient tombs were made of clay that the Ancient Egyptians found by the river. Other artifacts were made of glass that can last forever.

UNIT 8

Lesson 1

Yaseen loved playing marbles with his brother Sami. He had a small skateboard that he thought was really good fun. Yaseen's favorite toy was his action figure. It looked like Spider Man. He loved making up lots of games for it. Yaseen and Sami played board games very often, but Sami usually beat Yaseen.

Lesson 3

Last week, Omar was doing a class quiz about free-time games. Nader really loved games like running, climbing, and playing football. Reda enjoyed playing party games like hopscotch and hide and seek. Sama thought playing outside was quite good, but she preferred playing with her doll's house.

Test Yourself

Last week, Fares and Dalia visited their grandma in Luxor. Fares was so excited to find a box of his old toys at her house. Fares loved playing with his old action figures, too! He made up lots of games for them. His sister Dalia had a doll's house. They both played with it.

UNIT 9

Lesson 1

Lama is writing a review of a story. The story is about a man who goes to the market with his son and a donkey. The narrator is Goha. The setting is the countryside, many years ago. The characters are the man and his son. The moral is that you can't make all people happy.

Lesson 3

My name is Nada. I love reading. Yesterday, I read a story about a boy called Sami. He worked as a shepherd, looking after sheep. Every day, he took the sheep up the hill and rested while the sheep ate the delicious grass. All the villagers loved him, as he always told the truth.

Test Yourself

My favorite story is "Goha and the Donkey." The characters are Goha, his son, and the donkey. It took place in the countryside. The story is about a man and his son, who take turns riding the donkey. But people aren't happy with anyone riding the donkey. In the ending, they both carry the donkey!

UNIT 10

Lesson 1

I'm Salma; I read a book about proverbs, and it was amazing. Proverbs have more than one meaning; for example, this proverb, "The early bird catches the worm," tells us that a bird that is early, or the first to try to catch a worm, usually catches it. It also means that to be successful, you need to be the first to do something.

Lesson 3

Many birds migrate to and from Egypt and across it, because of where it is in the world. North Africa is hotter than Europe, so in winter, many birds leave northern European countries and fly to warmer places. This means that lots of interesting birds migrate to Egypt, such as eagles, falcons, and swifts.

Lessons 4 & 5

The Ras Mohammed National Park on the Red Sea is a fantastic area for locals and tourists to visit. This beautiful area on the Sinai Peninsula is famous for its sea life, warm water, and amazing weather. People come from all over the world to snorkel and scuba dive here. You can see coral reefs and lots of brightly colored fish, and maybe sharks.

Test Yourself

Hi, I'm Salma. Next month, my family and I are going on a tour to see the birds and animals which live near the water. We'll travel along the river in small boats and camp in tents at night. We'll bring our cameras because we'll see some amazing things. We hope to see lizards and turtles, as well as lots of interesting plants.

UNIT 11

Lesson 1

My name is Youssef. I'm in grade six. We started a project at school called Community Help. We started a vegetable garden. There were lots of people from the community who volunteered to help us in the garden. We grew potatoes, tomatoes, carrots, and peppers. We also grew strawberries, oranges, and apples.

Lesson 2

I always like to volunteer. I volunteer at a day center for old people. I show them how to open jars with a multi-grip. I do a beach clean-up too. I pick up the trash with a grabber and put the trash in black bags. It's very easy to use.

Test Yourself

Omar volunteers to help clean trash from the river, so that animals' habitats are safer.
Lara helps out in the kindergarten class. She reads stories to the younger children.
Ali and his parents donate lots of toys and paintings to the children's hospital. Youssef and his friends started a vegetable garden in their school. They grow fresh vegetables.

نصوص استماع الامتحانات النهائية

Final Exams

Exam 1

My name is Amira. I'm in grade 6. I love playing all kinds of games. I play at home sometimes, but most times I play at school. At school, we usually play hopscotch. After home, we usually play video games. My brother often beats me. I play video games for about an hour a day.

Exam 2

Nadia is an active girl. She likes sports and adventures. Next week, she is going camping in the mountains. They will go on safari during the day. They will camp in tents at night. They are going to see birds and animals which live near the water. There might be crocodiles in the water, so they mustn't swim.

Exam 3

My favorite story is "Goha and the Donkey". It took place in the countryside. The characters are Goha, his son, and the donkey. The story is about a man and his son, who take turns riding the donkey. But people weren't happy with anyone riding the donkey. In the ending, they both carry the donkey!

Exam 4

Amina is in grade six. She always likes to play. When she was little, she liked to play games. She liked the games that use a lot of imagination. She liked them because she was very good at making up games. She had a lot of action figures. She also had a doll's house.

Exam 5

My name is Hana. I always loved playing with my toys. I loved playing with my old action figures. I made up lots of games for my action figures. I also had a train set. I didn't have rollerblades. My sister had a big cuddly toy.

Exam 6

My friend Osama and I were playing in the forest yesterday. It was a lovely afternoon and the sun was shining. We were near my home, and we were hoping to see some interesting animals and birds. We were walking along the path when we suddenly saw a little house in the distance.

Exam 7

The Ancient Egyptians started using iron more than 5,000 years ago. Some of their early iron was from meteorites. Ancient Egyptian craftsmen made a famous dagger for Tutankhamun's tomb from a meteorite. Iron was more precious than gold because it was rarer.

Exam 8

Fareeda Hassan was born in Alexandria in 1994. As a child, Fareeda helped her mom buy her elder neighbors' shopping. She started preparatory school in 2006. She first participated in volunteer events in the same year when she and a team did a beach clean-up.

Exam 9

My friend Ali and I were playing in the forest yesterday. It was a lovely morning and the sun was shining. We were near my home, and we were hoping to see some interesting animals and birds. We were walking along the path when we suddenly saw a little house in the distance.

Exam 10

I'm Marwa. I like studying proverbs and knowing their meanings. I read a book about proverbs, and it was amazing. There are some interesting proverbs such as "Don't count your chickens before they hatch." There's also "Birds of a feather flock together," which means that similar people like doing the same things.

Exam 11

I went to the Museum of Ancient History last week. The museum was full of Ancient Egyptian artifacts. Mr. Ashraf was our guide at the museum. He told us that we have many artifacts in Egypt that are made of different materials. We enjoyed our visit to the museum.

Exam 12

I visited The Ras Mohammed National Park on the Red Sea last year. I went with my brothers. It's famous for its sea life, warm water, and amazing weather. I went there to snorkel and scuba dive. I saw coral reefs, lots of brightly colored fish, and sharks. There was lots of other wildlife, too, and it was a great place for bird-watching.

Exam 13

My name is Youssef. I'm in grade six. We started a project at school called Community Help. We started a vegetable garden. There were lots of people from the community who volunteered to help us in the garden. We grow potatoes, tomatoes, carrots, and peppers. We also grow strawberries, oranges, and apples.

Exam 14

Yesterday, I was hungry. I wanted to make salatet zabadee. I took the recipe from my grandma. It was very easy. First, mix the yogurt and the mint in a bowl. Next, stir the mixture. Finally, add salt if you like.

Exam 15

When I was younger, my favorite toy was my skateboard. I loved going to the park and playing with my friends. I had to wear a helmet and knee pads. I got my first skateboard when I was seven. I liked it.

Exam 16

When Magda was younger, she liked playing outdoors. Her favorite game was hopscotch. She loved going to the park and playing with her friends. They used different colored chalk to draw squares. One day, she was playing, and then she hurt her ankle. It was really bad.

Writing Answers

يحتوى هذا الجزء على إجابات أسئلة الكتابة (براجراف) الخاصة بجميع الوحدات.

UNIT 7

[Unit 7 Lesson 2]

"Cats in Ancient Egypt"

The Ancient Egyptians loved animals and kept many as pets. They particularly adored cats, and there was a cat in almost every house. The Ancient Egyptians believed that cats looked after them and kept them safe. These pets weren't only important for the Ancient Egyptians' everyday life. They were also important in the afterlife.

[Unit 7 Lessons 4 & 5]

"Iron in Ancient Egypt"

Iron was a special metal in Ancient Egypt. It wasn't only durable, but it was also very rare and valuable. The early iron that the Ancient Egyptians used came from a meteorite. As it was more precious and rarer than gold, the Ancient Egyptians used it to make small items like jewelry.

[Test Yourself on Unit 7]

"Metal in Ancient Egypt"

The Ancient Egyptians traded with other countries, and metal was one thing they traded. Metal was harder than stone and they could melt it into different shapes. They used metal to make tools and weapons so that they could hunt animals. Gold and silver were popular metals for making jewelry and art to sell.

UNIT 8

[Unit 8 Lesson 2]

"Games I was good at"

I loved all kinds of games. I was very good at skipping and running. I was quite good at hopscotch, but I preferred playing hide and seek. I also enjoyed playing marbles. I really enjoyed playing outside with my friends. I didn't like climbing at all.

[Unit 8 Lessons 4 & 5]

"Video games"

My favorite video games are ones where you build cities. I play for about an hour on the weekend. I like these games because I can be creative and make something new. Video games can be a problem when I play them too much.

[Test Yourself on Unit 8]

"My favorite game"

I love playing all kinds of games. I enjoy playing board games with my sister, although she often beats me! My favorite games are also video games. I don't play them very often. I play for about an hour on the weekend. I like these games because I can be creative and make something new.

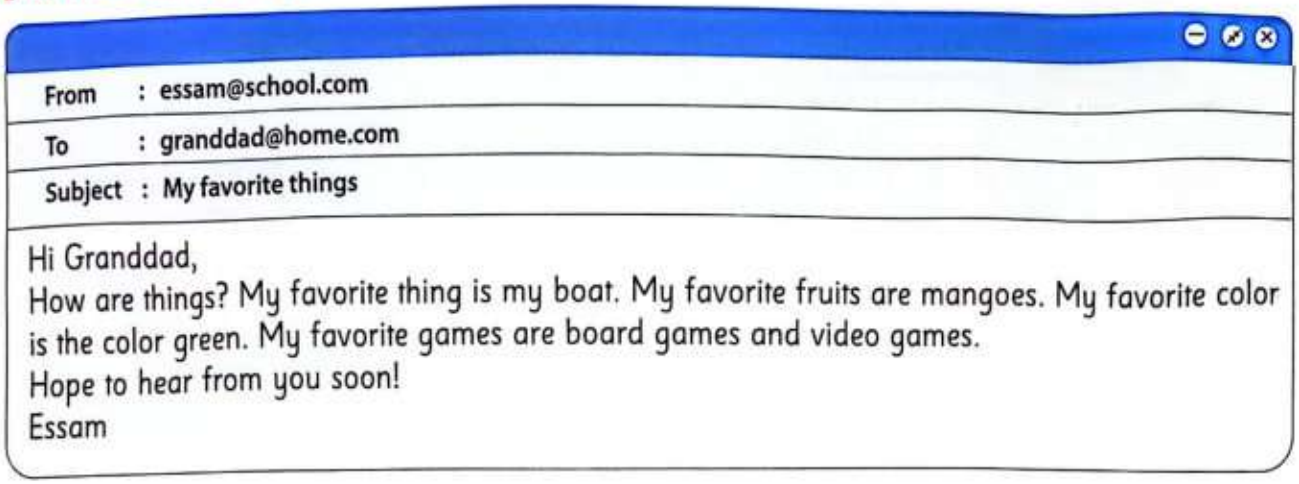
UNIT 9

[Unit 9 Lesson 2]

"A day on the beach"

I was on the beach yesterday. I was walking with my friends. It was a lovely morning, and the sun was shining. We were walking along the path when we suddenly saw a little dog. It was hungry and sick. We decided to help and take it home.

[Unit 9 Lessons 4 & 5]



[Test Yourself on Unit 9]

"A message in a bottle"

One day, I was swimming in the sea when I saw a glass bottle in the water. Granddad told me it was a message in a bottle. Granddad started to teach me how to write a message in a bottle. First, I write a message on a piece of paper. Next, I fold the paper and put it in the bottle. After that, I throw the bottle out to sea for someone else to find.

UNIT 10

[Unit 10 Lesson 2]

"Eco-tourism"

Eco-tourism is a way of traveling that doesn't damage the environment. It's more sustainable than traditional tourism, and it is designed to protect nature. People stay in simple accommodation. Many people like wildlife watching and eco-tourism is a good way for people to do this.

[Unit 10 Lessons 4 & 5]

"The Ras Mohammed National Park"

The Ras Mohammed National Park on the Red Sea is a fantastic area for locals and tourists to visit. This beautiful area on the Sinai Peninsula is famous for its sea life, warm water, and amazing weather. People come from all over the world to snorkel and scuba dive here.

[Test Yourself on Unit 10]

"Bird migration"

Many birds migrate to and from Egypt and across it searching for a warmer place, such as eagles, falcons, and swifts. Many water birds migrate to Egypt, too. They might use the sun, the stars, or the things they can see on the way. Scientists have spent a long time trying to find out how they do this!

UNIT 11

[Unit 11 Lesson 2]

"Video games"

My dad bought me a new games console. That's the controller. It's what you use to play the game. Those are the joysticks. They help you move your character around. Those are the action buttons. You use them to tell your character to run, jump, or do other actions.

[Unit 11 Lessons 4 & 5]

"A biography of a famous community worker"

Fareeda Hassan was born in Alexandria in 1994. She first participated in volunteer events in 2006 when she and a team did a beach clean-up. In 2010, she organized her first charity event delivering food boxes to the community. In 2020, she won the "2020 Community Worker" award. Today, she runs a charity for children.

[Test Yourself on Unit 11]

"Helping my community"

My name is Ola. I like to help my community and my friends too. Every Friday I volunteer to help clean trash from the river. My friend Hana donates lots of toys to the children's hospital. My friend Laila helps out in the kindergarten. She reads stories to the younger children.